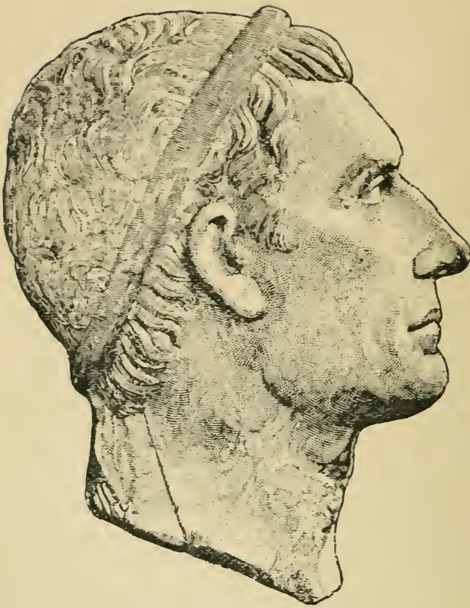
BELLUM GALLICUM

BOOK V

HENDERSON & HAGARTY

THE
COPP CLARK CO
LIMITED



CAESAR

From a Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.

Classical Text Book Series.

CAESAR'S
BELLUM GALLICUM,
(BOOK V.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION SUITABLE FOR BEGINNERS, AND A SERIES OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY EXAMINATIONS

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,
HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,

AND

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.,
CLASSICAL MASTER, HARBORD STREET COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO,
LATE FELLOW BY COURTESY, JOHNS HOPKINS UNIV., BALTIMORE.

TORONTO:
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,
9 FRONT STREET WEST.

PREFACE.

This edition of Book V. of Caesar's Gallic War differs to some extent from former editions of Caesar. Exercises designed to simplify the first lessons in translation have been inserted; a connected précis, in Latin and mainly in Caesar's own words, of the story of Books I.–IV. has been added with a view to providing those teachers who wish it with material of a simple nature for sight work in junior classes. Headings, furnishing *the reader* at a glance with an outline of the story and its main subdivisions, have been put in with a view to arousing that interest in the subject matter without which no pupil can ever learn to "*read*" Latin properly. It is hoped that this edition will go far to intensify and quicken the Revival of Classical Study that has already begun in our schools.

J. H.

E. W. H.

TORONTO, January, 1894.



Map No. 1.
GAUL
IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
10 20 40 60 80 100
4 Long West 2 0 Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich 6 8 10
54
52
50
MONA I.
BRITANNIA
Conimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Tamesis Fl.
Ancalites
Segontiaci
Bibroci
Cantium
(Deal)
(Dover)
GERMANIA
Batavi
Usipetes
Rhenus Fl.
Insula Batavorum
Vacalus
Tencteri
Sugambri
Ubii
Suevi
Bacenis
Silva
Cherusci
Mosa Fl.
Menapii
Eburones
Morini
Geidumni
Centrones
Grudii
Levaci
Scaldis Fl.
Pleumoxii
Nervii
Aduatuci
Aduatuca
Oppidum Aduatucorum
Portus Itius
Atrebates
Nemetocenna
Sabis Fl.
Mosa
Segni
Condrusi
Germani
Ambiani
Samara Fl.
Veromandui
Arduenna Silva
Paemani
Cisrhenani
Treveri
Mosella Fl.
Moenus Fl.
Vangiones
Nemetes
Sedusii
BELGAE
Caleti
Samarobriva
Bibrax
Bratuspantium
Bellovaci
Axona Fl.
Suessiones
Noviodunum
Remi
Caeroesi
Durocortorum
Ambivariti
Mediomatrici
Unelli
Veliocasses
Lexovii
Isara (Oise) Fl.
Matrona


ARMORICAE
CELTAE
GALLIA
AQUITANI
PROVINCIA
GALLIA CITERIOR
HISPANIA
OCEANUS
ATLANTICUS
MARE
INTERNUM
Osismi
Curiosolitae
Veneti
Redones
Condate
Ambibarii
Aulerci
Diablintres
Cenomani
Carnutes
Namnetes
Andes
Liger Fl.
Turones
Lemovices
Pictones
Limonum
Santones
Carantonus Fl.
Vigena Fl.
Bituriges
Lemovices
Petrocorii
Duronius Fl.
Garumna
Nitiobriges
Vocates
Cocosates
Tarusates
Elusates
Sontiates
Ptianii
Tarbelli
Atur Fl.
Sibuzates
Bigerriones
Garumni
Auscii
Tectosages
Tolosa
Carcasso
Narbo Martius
Illiberis
Atax Fl.
Tarnis Fl.
Ruteni
Cadurci
Eleutheri
Oltis Fl.
Arverni
Uxellodunum
Gergovia
Elaver Fl.
Gabali
Vellavii
Cevenna Mons
Arecomici
Volcae
Helvii
Rhodanus Fl.
Cavari
Vocontii
Druentia Fl.
Massilia
Isara
Vienna
Allobroges
Ambarri
Segusiavi
Brannovices
Brannovii
Aulerci
Decetia
Boii
Gorgobina
SIVE
Avaricum
Noviodunum
Noviodunum
Genabum
Vellaunodunum
Senones
Agedicum
Melodunum
Tricasses
Lingones
Alesia
Mandubii
Haedui
Bibracte
Cabillonum
Matisco
Arar Fl.
Sequani
Vesontio
Dubis Fl.
Leuci
Vosegus
Rauraci
Tulingi
Latobrigi
Boii
Venetus
Helvetii
Jura M.
Lemanus L.
Genava
Nantuates
Veragri
Seduni
Octodurus
Salassi
Lepontii
Centrones
Alpes
Graioceli
Ocelum
Caturiges
48
46
44
2
4
6
8

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar[1] was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100.[2] He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iülus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state. **Birth.** *His family.*

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.[3] *Caesar's father.*

---

[1]Each Roman citizen had usually *three names:* called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan*), and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

[2]Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 31, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronology of his life, the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

[3]*Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

Related to Marius. His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic.

Betrothed to Cossutia. He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, *Marries Cornelia.* daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

Goes to the East and serves his first campaign. In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of *Returns home.* Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

Tactics of Caesar. The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes filled with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by that of slaves. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Sen- *Composition of the Senate.* ate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the mid-

The three parties at Rome.

way between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly

Caesar indicts Dolabella and Antonius.

corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he

Goes to Rhodes.

Captured by pirates.

went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now *Fermaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of $50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

Elected pontifex.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had

Reaction against Sylla's policy.

meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In

Elected quaestor.

68 B.C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this

office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

Marries Pompeia. B.C. 67.

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole commander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithradates, king of Pontus.

Elected curule aedile.

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile*. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B.C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus*. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

Caesar pontifex maximus.

Elected praetor.

In 62 B.C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On

Propraetor of Spain. *First Triumvirate.* *Consul 59 B.C.* *Julia Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.* *Goes to Gaul.*

resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate*. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for *five* years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

GALLIC CAMPAIGNS.

58 B.C. Helvetii and Ariovistus

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii, who were moving westward and attempting to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

B.C. 57. The Belgae.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

B.C. 56. The Veneti.

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further.

B.C. 55. The Germans and Britons.

In his fourth campaign Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain.

B.C. 54. Britain.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul, which he suppressed 53 B.C.

B.C. 52.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With

the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

B C. 51 In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

B.C. 50. The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

QUARREL WITH POMPEY.

Changes while Caesar was in Gaul. During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

Caesar crosses the Rubicon. With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B.C. 48, at *Pharsalia*. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Pharsalia. B.C. 48.

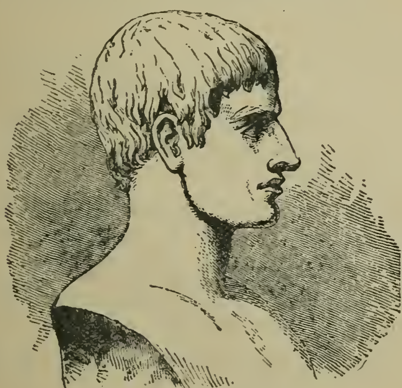
Thapsus. B.C. 46. Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master

of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda* totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man. *Munda.*

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house. *Death of Caesar, B.C. 44.*

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent: his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age. *Caesar's appearance.*



BRUTUS, THE MURDERER OF CAESAR.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant:* –

(a) Commentarii de Bello Gallico in *seven* books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) Commentarii de Bello Civili in *three* books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works:*—

(a) Anticato. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) De Analogia, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi.* Dedicated to Cicero and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) Libri Auspiciorum or *Auguralia.* Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus.*

(d) De Astris. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) Apothegmata or *Dicta Collectanea.* A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) Poemata; nearly all written in his youth. To

these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis* and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46.

SUMMARY OF CAESAR'S LIFE.

Born 100 B.C. Father dies 84 B.C.

Married Cornelia 83 B.C.

Retires from Rome owing to enmity of Sylla. Returns on Sylla's death, 78 B.C.

Wins popularity by attacks upon Senatorial party.

Goes to Rhodes to study rhetoric under Molo. Captured by pirates on his way thither.

Elected *pontifex*, *quaestor*, *curule aedile*, *pontifex maximus*, *praetor*, 70-62 B.C.

Consul B.C. 59. First Triumvirate.

Gallic Campaigns 58-50 B.C.

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate, 49 B C.

Defeats Pompey at **Pharsalia, 48 B.C.**—Gains control of Africa at Thapsus, 46 B.C.—Spain, at Munda, 45 B.C.

Assassinated 44 B.C.

CAESAR'S PERSONALITY.

"To be a great general was the short road to political power. Caesar's keen eye saw this, and, though too much must not be made of it, certainly it was not absent from the motives which made him eager to have the command in Gaul assigned to him. There were great men in the world before Caesar, but it seemed to good judges of his own age that he was greater than them all; and there have been great men after him, but still, compared with all before and after, so far as it is possible to compare where circumstances are so different, his name seems to good judges the greatest of all names known to history. Better men have lived, greater statesmen, perhaps greater generals, but none have so combined the qualities which we praise and wonder at. The Emperors

of Rome, the German Kaisers, probably the Russian Czars, bore or still bear his name. A month, was renamed in his honour, and has retained the name of "the mightiest Julius" ever since in the languages of all Europe.

His wonderful life must be studied elsewhere, his fearless youth, his early manhood devoted to the cause of liberty and reform, his marvellous success as a general, though he only turned soldier comparatively late in life, and held no command until he was forty years old. How he became the master of Rome's destinies, and by justice and clemency showed that he was worthy to control them, and was ambitious more for his country than for himself; and how, in the height of his greatness, he was murdered by men who called him tyrant, and thought that the only right form of government was the rule of the noble and wealthy few,—of the oligarchy which bore and disgraced the name of the Roman Republic,—all this forms a history full of interest and lessons for all time.

Here (Bk. V.) we have only the story of his second invasion of Britain and one scene from the midst of his great exploit of the conquest of Gaul. It will show us something of his care for his men which so endeared him to them, of his promptitude and daring, of his supreme calm and self-control, of his fairness as an historian, of his kindness as a superior officer, slow to blame, quick to praise; and it will give us a lively picture of his enemies, their strength and weakness, their mode of warfare. Above all, it will show us the matchless strength of the Roman legions when fighting behind the entrenchments which they were so skilled in making."—*Colbeck.*

DRAMATIC CHARACTER OF BOOKS V. AND VI.

Mr. Colbeck's words quoted above aptly set forth some of the leading dramatic features of this most interesting portion of Caesar's otherwise rather dry military narrative. In books V. and VI. we realize Caesar's object in writing, *i.e.*, to give to his fellow-countrymen of his own

time, and to leave on record for all ages to come a pen-picture of himself and his army as they figured in these years of Roman aggrandizement in Western Europe. With how bold yet delicate a touch he paints

(1) himself, as a considerate and humane officer, "slow to blame, quick to praise," (see the episode of Cicero, Bk. V., 46-52, and Bk. VI., 42,); as a cool-headed strategist, a merciful conqueror, and a just judge;

(2) his subordinate officers, Cotta, Sabinus, Labienus Cicero, their faults and their virtues;

(3) his foes, the Britons, the Germans, the Gauls; their chieftains (Cassivellaunus and Ambiorix); their modes of fighting and other national characteristics;

(4) his own legionaries, with their intrepid zeal amidst fearful odds of peril and hardship;

(5) and even Pompey, not yet an avowed enemy, conceding something to "friendship and the good of the commonwealth."

These features combine to make books V. and VI. an interesting study even from the literary stand-point.

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). *Greek settlement.* On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C. the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid

Romans. of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia, he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot *springs* of the neighbourhood. About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon;* and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia.* Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

Aquae Sextiae.

Feuds.

Cimbri and Teutones.

In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

Successive defeats of the Romans.

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. *Cimbri and Teutones separate.* While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. *Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri.* In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. *Intrigues of Catiline.* He and his associates attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. *Ariovistus invited.* Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in the battle of Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration. *Emigration of Helvetii.*

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of

Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this, B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helveti were on the move westward.

Caesar Consul.

Sets out to Gaul.



ROMAN SOLDIERS, FROM TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

IV.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (*phalanx*), a method very common among the

Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (*hastati*) were the youngest men, in the second (*principes*) were men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion ;

Hastati : — — — — — — — — — —
Principes : — — — — — — — — — —
Triarii : — — — — — — — — — —

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurion commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have :

Hastati :	10 manipuli,	120 men	= 20 centuries,	60 men	=	1,200
Principes :	10 "	120 "	= 20 "	60 "	=	1,200
Triarii :	10 "	60 "	= 20 "	30 "	=	600
	—		—			——
	30		60			3,000
			To every century, 20 velites		=	1,200
						——
						4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion was attached 10 *turmae*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into *three decuriae* of 10 men each ; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have

been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the first two lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

The officers of the army were :

Officers.

Centurions.

(a) *Centurions* (*Centuriones*): These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

Tribunes.

(b) *Military Tribunes* (*Tribuni Militum*): These were six to each legion : hence ten centurions were under each tribune.

Legati.

(c) *Lieutenants* (*Legati*): These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the *præfecti equitum* and *decuriones*.

The *weapons* of the Roman soldier were of two kinds :

Arms.

(1) *Offensive weapons.* The ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) was armed with (a) *the javelin.* Of this there were four kinds : *pilum*, *iaculum*, *hasta*, *lancea*. The *pilum* was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a strong, sharp iron point about two feet long was attached. The *iaculum* was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the *hasta* was a long spear used for stabbing. The *lancea* was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the *pilum*, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the *iaculum*, *hasta*, and *lancea*. Some of the latter carried bows (*arcus*), and arrows (*sagittae*), slings (*fundae*).

(b) *The sword* (*gladius*) was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (*balteus*).

(2) *Defensive weapons.* The soldiers of the legion had: (a) *a brazen helmet* (*cassis*), surmounted with a crest; (b) *a cuirass* (*lorica*), made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates: (c) *greaves* (*ocreae*), reaching as high as the knee; (d) *a shield* either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (*scutum*), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (*clipeus*), The light armed troops had a small buckler (*parma*), and a helmet of leather (*galea*). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a broach on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

Standards. The standards of the Roman army were: (a) *Aquila*, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. See Vocabulary; *Aquilifer*. To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

Musical instruments. The *musical instruments* of the army were: (a) *tuba*, trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions ; (a) *agmen primum*, or van ; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body ; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldier carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina*.

VI.

THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates : (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the enemy ; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this ; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores; vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about 6¼ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum.*
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum.*
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum.*
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum.*
6. Street 100 feet wide, called *principia* or *via principalis.*
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse.
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turmae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. The two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse (*equites*) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati*; in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (*evocati equites*).
20. The veteran foot (*evocati pedites*).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (*ablecti equites*).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (*ablecti pedites*).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (*vallum*).
30. Ditch (*fossa*), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra.*
32. *Porta principalis sinistra.*
33. *Porta decumana.*
34. *Porta praetoria.*
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.

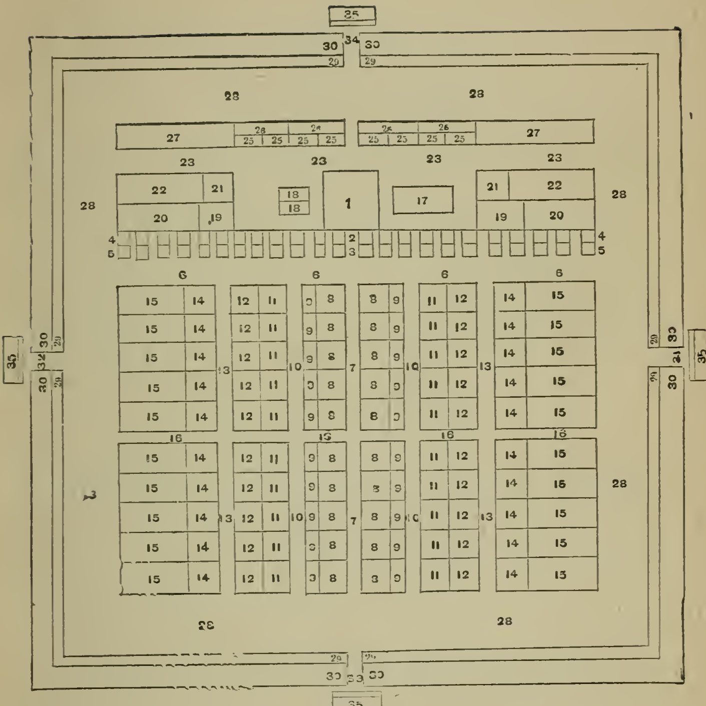


DIAGRAM OF CAMP.

SYNOPSIS OF BOOKS I.-IV.,

ADAPTED FOR BEGINNERS.

FIRST CAMPAIGN—58 B.C.

Caesar's Description of Gaul.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partes tres, quarum unam incŏlunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui Galli appellantur. Hi omnes linguā. institutis, lēgibus inter se diffĕrunt.

Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen dīvĭdit ; a Belgis Matrŏna et Sēquăna. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant. Proximi sunt Germānis qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt, quibuscum Belgae continenter bellum gerunt. Helvetii relĭquos Gallos virtutĕ praecēdunt.

THE HELVETIAN WAR.

Conspiracy of Orgetorix.

Messala et Pisone consŭlibus, (58 B.C.) Orgetorix, qui nobilissimus Helvetiorum fuit, civitati persuasit ut e finibus suis excederent. Hoc fecit regni cupiditate inductus. Castico, Sequano, itemque Dumnorigi, Aeduo, ut regnum in civitatibus suis occuparent persuadet. Hi per tres potentissimos populos totīus Galliae sese potiri posse spērant.

Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Sed Orgetorix, cum civitas suum ius exsequi conaretur, mortuus est. Ut Helvetii arbitrantur, sibi mortem conscivit.

The Helvetii leave home and are conquered.

Post eius mortem, nihilomĭnus Helvetii e finibus suis excedere conati sunt. Per Provinciam itĕr facere volebant. Caesar, qui tum in Gallia citeriore erat, in Galliam ulteriorem cum legionibus

quinque contendit et pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, rescindi iussit. Deinde a lacu Lemanno ad montem Iuram murum fossamque perducit. Ea spe deiecti, per Sequanos Helvetii iter fecerunt. In fines Aeduorum pervenerunt eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui autem socii et amici Populi Romani erant. Caesar Helvetios secutus flumen Ararim transeuntes in fugam dedit.

Interea Dumnorigi, Aeduo, custodes Caesar ponit quod civitatem suam ne frumentum daret deterrēret. Helvetii, apud Bibracte, Aeduorum oppidum, iterum superati, pacem petiērunt atque domum reverti iussi sunt.

THE GERMAN WAR.

Ariovistus expelled from Gaul.

Eodem anno Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, Rhenum exercitum transduxit atque superbe et crudeliter Gallis imperabat. Galli a Caesare auxilium petunt. Ariovistum, proelio facto, Rhenum transire et domum redire Caesar coegit.

Ita unā aestate, duobus maximis bellis confectis, Caesar in citeriorem Galliam ad conventūs agendos profectus est.

SECOND CAMPAIGN—57 B.C.

THE BELGIAN WAR.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, ad eum rumores afferebantur, omnes Belgas contra Populum Romānum coniurare. His nuntiis commotus, duas novas lĕgiones conscripsit et initā aestate in ulteriorem Galliam misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervēnit. Eo cum de improviso venisset, Remi legatos miserunt et se suaque omnia in potestatem Populi Romāni permisērunt.

Flumen Axŏnam Caesar exercitum transduxit et cum Belgae Bibrax, oppidum Remorum, expugnare conarentur, eos superavit.

Fierce engagement with the Nervii.

Suessionibus Bellovacisque in deditionem acceptis, in fines Nerviorum iter fecit. Cum iis proelium apud flumen Sabim committit. Quo in proelio ubi Caesar rem esse in angusto vīdit, scutum militi detraxit et in primam aciem processit. Cuius adventu spes

llata est et proelium redintegratum. Hostes vero etiam in extremā spe magnam virtutem praestiterunt. Jacentibus enim suis insistebant atque ex eorum corporibus pugnabant. Hoc proelio prope ad internecionem gens ac nomen Nerviorum redactum est.

Omni Galliā pacatā, in Italiam Caesar profectus est.

THIRD CAMPAIGN—56 B.C.

THE VENETIAN WAR.

Cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Venĕti, cuius est civitatis amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae, Silium et Velanium, tribunos militum, retinent. Caesar, ab Crasso legato certior factus, naves aedificari in flumine Ligere iussit. Veneti bellum parant.

Strength of the Venetian ships.

Ipsorum naves ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae sunt. Totae sunt factae ex robore, atque carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium. Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocēre poterant, tanta in iis erat firmitudo.

Victory for Caesar.

Una tamen res magno usui fuit nostris, falces praeacutae longuriis insertae. His funes, qui antennas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi sunt. Navigio deinde remis incitato, funes praerumpebantur, antennae concidebant. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant. Quo proelio bellum Veneticum confectum est.

FOURTH CAMPAIGN—55 B.C.

CAESAR CROSSES THE RHINE.

Ea quae secuta est hieme, Pompeio et Crasso consulibus, Usipetes et Tencteri, Germani, flumen Rhenum transierunt. Causa transeundi fuit quod ab Suebis bello premebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum. Haud multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt. Vinum ad se importari non sinunt. Usipetes et Tencteri, ab Suebis expulsi, agros et aedificia Menapiorum, qui ad utramque ripam flumine incolebant, occupaverunt.

His de rebus Caesar certior factus, atque infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Germanis superatis, pontem trans Rhenum faciendum curavit et exercitum transduxit. Diebus decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

FIRST ROMAN INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Preliminary enquiries.

Exiguā parte aestatis relĭquā, Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, in omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata esse auxilia intellegebat. Mercatoribus ad se vocatis, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli habērent, neque qui essent idonei portūs, reperire poterat.

C. Volusenum cum nāvi longā ad haec cognoscenda praemittit. Huic mandat ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se revertatur.

Caesar repairs to the coast—The Britons thither send ambassadors.

Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Mōrĭnos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique et classem quam ad Venĕticum bellum effecerat convenire iubet. Interim legati ab Britannis ad eum veniunt et obsides dare pollicentur. Līberāliter pollicitus, eos dŏmum remittit.

Caesar crosses the Channel.

Nactus idoneam ad nāvigandum tempestatem, nāvibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis, tertiā fere vigiliā solvit. Equites in ulteriorem portum, qui ex eo lŏco ab mīlibus passuum octo aberat, progrĕdi et ibi naves onerarias duodeviginti conscendere iussit. Ipse horā circiter diei quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attĭgit.

His landing opposed.

Ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Ad horam nonam expectavit. Tum ventum et aestum nactus secundum, dăto signo, sublātis ancŏris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus est. Barbări, consilio eius cognĭto, cum equitatu, essedariis, relĭquis copiis subsecuti, nostros ēgrĕdi probibebant.

Fight on the shore—Brave conduct of a centurion.

Summa erat difficultas egrediendi. Nostri inusitato Britannorum genere pugnae perterriti non eādem alacritate, qua uti consuērant, utebantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit naves longas removeri ab onerariis, et remis incitari iussit. Navium figūrā et remorum motu permoti, barbari pĕdem rĕtŭlērunt. Nostris cunctantibus, is qui decimae lĕgionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, "Desilīte," inquit, "milites, nīsi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere. Ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum voce magnā dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri universi ex navi desiluerunt. Simul in arido constiterunt, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt. Longius vero prosequi non potuērunt quod equites insulam capere non potuĕrant.

The Britons pardoned,

Hostes proelio superati, ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt. Caesar ignoscere se imprudentiae dixit et obsides imperavit.

but, learning of Caesar's difficulties, they renew the war.

Die quarto postquam in Britanniam Caesar vēnit, naves octodecim, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae, tempestas coorta est atque continentem petere coactae sunt. Eādem nocte naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportaverat, tempestas afflictabat.

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae rebellionem fecerunt.

Caesar again suppresses them, and returns to the continent.

At Caesar naves omnes, praeter duodecim quae amissae erant, refecit et, Britannis iterum proelio superatis, obsidum numerum duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit. Paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit. Quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt.

EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION

INTRODUCTORY TO

BOOK V.

Exercise 1.

1. Domitius et Claudius consules erant.

2. Domitio et Claudio consulibus, Caesar in Italiam discedit.

3. Legātos lĕgionibus praefecerat.

4. Discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, his legatis imperat ut nāves aedificarent.

5. Legatos naves aedificare iubet Caesar.

6. Naves quam plurimas aedificare iussi sunt legati.

Exercise 2.

1. Legati, quos legionibus praefecerat, naves aedificant veteresque reficiunt.

2. Legatis naves aedificandae sunt veteresque reficiendae.

3. Naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curant legati.

4. Legatos praefecit exercitui ad naves aedificandas.

5. Naves ab legatis aedificatae sunt.

6. Ad celeritatem onerandi paulo facit humiliores; ad onera transportanda latiores.

7. In nostro mari navibus humilibus atque latis non utimur.

8. Has naves facit humiliores atque latiores quam quae sunt in nostro mari.

9. Humiliores eas faciunt quam quibus utimur.

10. Latioribus navibus Galli in Oceăno ūti consuēvērunt.

Exercise 3.

1. Multae res sunt usui hominibus ad naves aedificandas.

2. Ea quae sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispāniā apportari iubet.

3. Naves omnes actuarias fĭĕri imperat.

4. Actuarias eas facere legatos iubet.

5. Militibus ŭti naves actuarias faciant imperat.

6. Quam ad rem humilitas adiuvat.

Exercise 4.

1. Conventūs iam peracti erant. In Illyricum proficiscitur Caesar.

2. Conventibus peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur.

3. Pirustae partem provinciae vastabant.

4. Parte provinciae a Pirustis vastata, Caesar profectus est.

5. Pirustas provinciam vastare audiebat.

6. Pars provinciae vastabatur a Pirustis.

7. Partem provinciae vastari audiebat.

8. Pars iam vastata erat. Partem vastatam esse audivit.

Exercise 5.

1. Eo pervēnit. Eo cum vēnisset, civitatibus ut milites dărent imperat. Hos milites certum in locum ad se convenire iubet.

2. Quae res Pirustis nuntiată est. Legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. Hi ita cum eo agunt *(plead)*; "Nihil earum rerum publico factum est consilio. Nos parati sumus de iniuriis satisfacere."

3. Legatos mittunt qui haec docent.

4. Legatos mittunt qui haec doceant.

5. Docent nihil factum esse; sese paratos esse satisfacere.

6. Qua re nuntiatā, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil publico factum esse consilio. Sese paratos esse de iniuriis satisfacere demonstrant.

Exercise 6.

1. Perceptă est oratio eorum. Caesar obsides imperat.

2. Pirustis ut obsides dărent imperat. Eos ad se adduci iubet.

3. "Nisi," inquit, "ita feceritis, ego bello vos persequar."

4. Perceptā hāc oratione, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad se adduci iubet. Nisi ita fecissent se bello eos persecuturum esse demonstravit.

5. Obsidibus adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat qui litem aestiment (*note the mood*) poenamque constituant.

6. Hi sunt arbitri qui litem aestimant (***note the mood***) poenamque constituunt

Exercise 7. (*Chap 8.*)

1. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente relicto, ipse ad solis occasum naves solvit. Leni Africo provectus est. Mediā circiter nocte, ventus intermittitur. Vento intermisso cursum non tenet et longius aestu delatus est. Ortā luce, sub sinistra (*on his left*) Britanniam relictam conspexit.

2. Caesar legato, quid fieri velit, ostendit.

3. Hoc est quod Caesar vult.

4. Ea, quae in Gallia gerebantur, Labienus cognovit.

5. Quae in Gallia gererentur cognovit.

6. Relictus est ut, quae in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret et consilium pro tempore caperet.

Exercise 8. (*Chap. 9.*)

1. Militum virtus laudata est ab imperatōre.

2. Laudanda est militum virtus imperatori.

3. Quo in loco hostium copiae consederunt ?

4. Ex captivis cognovit quo in loco hostium copīae consedissent.

5. Cohortibus decem ad mare relictis, progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est.

6. Illi, ad flumen progressi, proelium committere coeperunt.

7. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti munītum.

8. At milites, testudine factā, eos ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes Caesar prosequi vetuit.

9. Postrīdie eius diei milites equitesque misit ut eos persequerentur.

10. Naves afflictae sunt quod neque ancorae subsistebant neque nautae vim tempestatis pati poterant.

11. His aliquantum itineris progressis, equites ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent (*note the subjunctive*) superiore nocte, coortā tempestate, naves afflictas esse, quod neque ancorae subsisterent neque nautae vim tempestatis pati possent.



C. JULIUS CAESAR.

C. IULI CAESARIS DE BELLO GALLICO COMMENTARIORUM

LIBER QUINTUS.

CH. 1-7.—CAESAR IN GAUL PREPARES FOR THE 2ND INVASION OF BRITAIN; WINTER OF 55–54 B.C.

CH. 8-23.—SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

CH. 24-58.—ATTACK ON THE WINTER CAMPS IN GAUL.

Caesar leaves directions for building a fleet on the coast. Departs for Illyricum to quiet the Pirustae, 1. Returns and finds satisfactory progress. Marches against the Treveri, 2-4. Caesar, at Portus Itius, prepares to sail, 5. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, gives trouble and is slain, 6, 7.

Caesar orders a fleet to be built.

I.—L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consŭlibus discēdens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannīs facere consuērat, legātis impĕrat, quos lĕgionibus praefecerat, ŭtı, quam plurimas possent, hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum mŏdum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores,

quam quibus in nostro mări uti consuevimus, atque id eo măgis, quod propter crēbras commutationes aestuum mĭnus magnos ibi fluctūs fiĕri cognoverat ; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in relĭquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias impĕrat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiŭvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispānia adportari iŭbet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in lŏcum convenire iubet. Quā rē nuntiatā Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dŏceant, nĭhil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Perceptā oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem addūci iubet ; nĭsĭ ĭta fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui lītem aestiment poenamque constituant.

The Pirustae give hostages.

II.—His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summā omnium rerum inŏpiā circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quīn paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus, iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter mīlium passuum triginta a continenti : huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, relīquit. Ipse cum lĕgionibus expedītīs quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fīnes Trēvĕrorum proficiscitur, quod hi nĕque ad concilia vĕniebant neque imperio parebant Germānosque Transrhenānos sollicitare dicebantur.

The soldiers praised for their zeal. Fleet ordered to rendezvous at Portus Itius.

III.—Haec cīvitās longe plurimum totīus Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet cōpias pĕditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et

The Treveri and their rival Chieftains.

Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treveris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per mĕdios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed postĕāquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consŭlere non possent: veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam lāberetur: itaque esse civitatem in suā potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fĭdei permissurum.

Cingetorix honored and Indutiomarus offended.

IV.—Caesar, etsi intellegebat, quā de causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterrēret, tămen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus vĕnire iussit. His adductis, in iis fīlio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consōlatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, ŭti in officio manēret; nĭhilo tamen sēcius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fiĕri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valēre, cuius tam ēgrĕgiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tŭlit factum grăviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiam inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimīco in nos animo fuisset, multo grăvius hoc dolōre exarsit.

Caesar prepares to sail.

V.—His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervĕnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenēre non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, re-

vertisse; relĭquas paratas ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invĕnit. Eodem equitatus totīus Galliae convĕnit numero milium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fīdem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum lŏco secum dūcere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Dumnorix gives trouble.

VI.—Erat unā cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo prĕcibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vīdit, omni spe impetrandi ademptā, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of Dumnorix.

VII.—Quā re cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum

equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quā re nuntiatā, Caesar intermissā profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat ; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt ; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—CH. 8-23.

Caesar's second landing in Britain. 54 B.C.

VIII.—His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu ortā luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus ; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

The Britons oppose his march inland.

IX.—Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli

atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causā iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Bad news of the fleet.

X.—Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maximā coortā tempestate prope omnes naves adflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Labienus builds new ships.

XI.—His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessiri iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem,

unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summā imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissā Cassivellauno ; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum octoginta Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant ; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

Cassivellaunus.

DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.– CH. 12, 13, 14.

The people.

XII.—Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoriā proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae causā ex Belgis transierant—qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt—et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia ; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant ; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

The island.

XIII.—Insula naturā triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem ; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia est, in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona ; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur ; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert

illorum opinio, septingentorum milium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

Manners and customs.

XIV.—Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, qua regio est maritima omnis neque multum a Gallicā differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

THE WAR CONTINUES.

More fighting; a surprise; death of a tribune.

XV.—Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso a spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

British mode of fighting.

XVI.—Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio

dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

The Britons repulsed.

XVII.—Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causā tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

XVIII.—Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

XIX.—Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos

iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causā se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.

XX.—Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubratium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

So do other tribes.

XXI.—Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossā munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causā convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

A British "town."

Four Kentish kings defeated.

XXII.—Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuntios mittit atque

his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione factā multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cassivellaunus treats of peace.

XXIII.—Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatūs expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac, summā tranquillitate consecutā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

CAESAR AGAIN IN GAUL—ATTACK ON THE WINTER CAMPS—WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

XXIV.—Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Caio Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Quinto Ciceroni, tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam in

Caesar distributes his legions for the winter.

Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit; tres in Bellovacis collocavit; his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque in Eburones, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

Murder of Tasgetius.

XXV.—Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimici multis palam ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque operā cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, eos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

SABINUS AND COTTA ATTACKED.—CH. 26, 27.

Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus.

XXVI.—Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsi suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus

emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperatā re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodirent; habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

Negotiations with the Gauls.

XXVII.—Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Caius Arpineius eques Romanus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consuerat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est; Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius operā stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate suā fecisse, sed coactu civitatis, suaque esse eiusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperandā communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et iureiurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines daturum. Quod cum faciat et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. Hāc oratione habitā discedit Ambiorix.

Ambiorix tenders advice.

DISPUTE BETWEEN SABINUS AND COTTA.—CH. 28—31.

A council of war.

XXVIII.—Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos exsistit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus inlatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

Cotta favors delay.

Sabinus urges a hasty retreat.

XXIX.—Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris extincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

XXX.—Hāc in utramque partem disputatione habitā, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, *Vincite*, inquit, *si ita*

vultis, Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; *neque is sum*, inquit, *qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.*

Sabinus prevails. The counsel of the enemy is accepted.

XXXI.—Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur, prima luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

Departure from camp.

ARMY OF SABINUS AND COTTA MASSACRED—CH. 32-37.

The ambuscade.

XXXII.—At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum expectabant, et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

Confusion of Sabinus; Cotta's valor.

XXXIII.—Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset, haec

posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat: et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnandum alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgò milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

The battle.

XXXIV.—At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et studio pugnandi pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant: levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse; rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

Tactics of the enemy.

XXXV.—Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam

Bravery of the Romans.

pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum Tito Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur; Quintus Lucanius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; Lucius Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

Cotta wounded.

XXXVI.—His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Cnaeum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

Sabinus again trapped.

XXXVII.—Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

The massacre.

Death of Sabinus and Cotta.

Q. CICERO BESIEGED BY THE NERVII, EBURONES AND ADUATUCI. CH. 38-52.

Activity of Ambiorix.

XXXVIII.—Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatumque sese subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, quas acceperint, iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

XXXIX.—Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

Cicero's camp surrounded.

Stubborn resistance of the Romans.

XL.—Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, quam munitionis causā comportaverant, turres admodum centum et viginti excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eadem ratione, qua pridie, ab nostris resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximi

diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

Bold reply of Cicero.

XLI.—Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciendae causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint; licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem populi Romani, accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro eius iustitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

The Nervii encircle the camp with rampart and trench.

XLII.—Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum novem et fossa pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognoverant et, quos de exercitu habebant captivos, ab his docebantur, sed nulla ferramentorum copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire nitebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum quindecim in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt, reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas idem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

The Gauls assault the camp,

XLIII.—Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehen-

derunt et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causā de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quodam loco turri adactā et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

but are repulsed.

XLIV.—Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones qui primis ordinibus adpropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, *Quid dubitas*, inquit, *Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.* Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt, in hostem tela universi coniciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio

Bravery of two centurions.

comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summā cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

News conveyed to Caesar by a Gallic slave.

XLV.—Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo illigatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

Caesar's prompt measures for relief.

XLVI.—Caesar acceptis litteris horā circiter undecimā diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum viginti quinque; iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Caium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fines legionem adducat, qua sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno, si reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat, Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

XLVII.—Horā circiter tertiā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die milia passuum viginti procedit. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legionemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causā devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius,

ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus, interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent, veritus, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, ut hostium impetum sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit, docet, omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

Labienus unable to join him.

XLVIII.—Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistolā ad amentum deligatā intra munitionem castrorum abiciat. In litteris scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore ; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat maximāque omnes laetitiā adficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

Caesar's march to the rescue.

A letter from Caesar.

Joy in Cicero's camp.

XLIX.—Galli re cognitā per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec erant armata circiter milia quadraginta. Cicero datā facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat ; hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat ; perscribit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar adlatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. Postero die luce prima movet castra et

The Gauls go to meet Caesar,

circiter milia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res, tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare ; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat. Consedit et, quam aequissimo loco potest, castra communit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere valles transire possit.

who encamps,

L.—Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utrique sese suo loco continent, Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, expectabant, Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet ; si id efficere non posset. ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet ; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris iubet.

and entices them to battle.

LI.—Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias traducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere ; post id tempus non fore potestatem ; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis, singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causā resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

The Gauls repulsed by a sortie.

LII.—Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione productā cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque collaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat; quod detrimentum culpā et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

Cicero relieved; Caesar on the scene praising and consoling.

LABIENUS AND THE TREVERI.—CH. 53-58.

LIII.—Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter sexginta, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac famā ad Treveros perlatā, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni tertiae decimae

News of Caesar's victory conveyed to Labienus.

Caesar's precautions for the winter.

Disturbed state of Gaul.

praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum, quae Armoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse neque longius milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

Caesar stands at bay.

LIV.—At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, denuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat (cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris, cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant) interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causā legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

Indutiomarus fails to arouse the Germans.

LV.—Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercitus nostri interfectā multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu : non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

But the Gauls flock to his standard.

LVI.—Ubi intellexit, ultro ad se veniri, alterā ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientiā facinoris instigari, alterā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli; quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

An armed council of the Gauls.

LVII.—Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognitā, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causā; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

Labienus sets a trap for Indutiomarus.

LVIII.—Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati

discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis—quod fore, sicut accidit. videbat—unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hāc re cognitā omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

A sortie; Indutiomarus slain.

The revolt collapses.

NOTES.

NOTES.

BOOK V.

N.B.—In the grammatical references, F. means First Latin Book; P., Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former, the numbers refer to *pages*; of the latter, to the *sections* of Part III., except where otherwise indicated.

CHAPTER I.

Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio consulibus: abl. abs.: F. 102, 3. Note: P. 85 (o). The *et* is often omitted between the names of consuls in this phrase. The year was A.U.C. 700; B.C. 54. The Romans marked their year by the names of the consuls in office; the Athenians by the name of the chief archon, hence called ἀρχων ἐπώνυμος; the Spartans by the first of the Ephors; the Argives by the priestesses of Juno.

ab hibernis: among the Belgae: B. IV., c. 38.

in Italiam=in Galliam Cisalpinam. Caesar as proconsul could not leave Gaul without the permission of the Senate. Italy Proper did not include *Liguria*, *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Illyricum*. Caesar generally spent his winters at *Luca*, a town on the borders of Italy Proper. "Here he could hold easy communication with his partisans at home. Lucca during his residence was more like a regal court than the headquarters of a Roman Proconsul. At one time 200 senators were counted among his visitors; 120 lictors indicated the presence of the numerous magistrates who attended his *levées*. Both Pompey and Crassus came here to hold a conference with him." Liddell's Hist. of Rome, p. 663.

consuerat=consueverat: note that *consuevi*, *memini*, *odi*, *coepi*, *novi* are perfects with a present meaning, the pluperfect having the meaning of an imperfect: hence, "was accustomed."

legatis: Caesar put a *legatus* over each legion.

quam plurimas: generally explained by *tam plurimas quam illi possent plurimas facere.* For *possent* see F. 206, 4; P. 106.

modum formamque: the former applies to "the shape" generally, the latter to "the form" particularly.

subductiones: "hauling up" on land, or "beaching"; cp. B. IV., c. 29: *in aridum subduxerat.* The plural is used, for more than one vessel is referred to. The word *deducere* is applied "to take down" the vessels to the sea.

humiliores sc. *naves:* the vessels were more flat than usual, with less elevation above the water, and with less depth of hold.

in nostro mari: the Mediterranean. So Plato (Phaedrus, 113, A.) calls the Mediterranean *ἡ παρ' ἡμῖν θάλασσα.* The classical meaning of *mediterraneus* is "inland" i.e., "far from the sea."

id eo magis, scil. *facit:* "he does this the more for the following reason."

minus magnos: the waves in the channel were shorter than in the ocean, not for the reason that Caesar gives, but because of the narrowness of the channel, the varied character of the coast, and the meeting of opposing currents.

ad onera—transportandam: with *onera* supply *transportanda* implied in *transportandam.*

maribus: said to be the only example of the ablative plural of *mare.* The plur. here refers to different parts of the Mare Internum or "Mediterranean."

actuarias predicate: scil. *naves.* These were vessels propelled by oars and sails.

fieri: what is the usual construction after imperat? F. 181, 3; P. II., 27.

usui: dative of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c).

ad armandas naves: "for rigging out the vessels" cp. *ὁπλίζειν* in Greek: Hom. Od. 17, 288: *νῆες ὁπλιζόμεναι.* He may refer to the fact that Spain supplied broom plant for cables, and metal for anchors.

conventibus: the proconsul held assizes or courts of justice in the principal cities of the province. In public or important causes he generally acted as judge, but in minor matters he delegated this power to his *quaestor* or to the *legati.* For convenience the provinces were divided into circuits (*conventus*).

Provinciae: Caesar's province.

Galliae citerioris: trace on the map *Gallia citerior* and *Gallia ulterior.*—*imperat:* what two meanings has *impero* and what two constructions? Translate, *militibus imperat: milites provinciae imperat.*

qui doceant=ut ei doceant: F. 184, 1; P. II., 25.

paratos—satisfacere: "that they were ready to make amends by all reasonable means for their wrong doing." The infinitive after *paratus* for the gerund or gerundive with *ad* is irregular. Zumpt explains the infinitive in such cases as the present by supposing that *paratus esse* equivalent to a single verb as *volo* which takes the infinitive.

eos i.e. obsides.

ad certam diem: when predetermination of future time is used we often find *ad* with accusative. Translate: *ad posterum diem senatum convocat: postero die senatum convocat.* It is rare that *dies* is feminine in such a case.

nisi—fecerint: the time of the verb is considered with reference to the act implied in *persecuturum.*

arbitros dat: "he appoints assessors." These *arbitri* based their decisions on equity. —*litem aestimare:* "assess the costs." —*poenam:* to be paid by the Pirustae over and above restitution.

qui=ut ei: see above *qui doceant.*

CHAPTER II.

revertitur: generally *reverti* is to return on one's journey: *redire* after the journey has been finished.

inde=ex Gallia citeriore. Long estimates that Caesar must have travelled over 2,000 miles. In the beginning of the year he left his army in Belgium, passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, went to Illyricum and settled disputes there, returned to Belgium in May or June.

cum: explain fully the force of *cum* with indic. and subj.: F. 203; P. 99 (f), v.

in—inopia: since the verb *sum* has no present participle, the prepositional ablative absolute is often used for it: cp. B. IV., c. 33., *in declivi ac praecipiti loco*: B. I., 33., *in tanto imperio:* B. II., 22., *in tanta iniquitate.* Translate here: "although they were in the greatest scarcity of all materials."

cujus: here *quod* would be more correct. Though the relative is often attracted into the case of its antecedent in Greek, it is not so common in Latin: yet we have in Hor., Sat. I. 6, 15, *judice quo nosti*: Ter. Heaut. I., 1, 36, *hac quidem causa qua dixi tibi.* Others explain the construction=*cujus generis naves.*

instructas: "fully rigged"; others read *constructas.*

neque—possent: literally: "and that they were not far from being able to be launched within a few days," *i.e.* "and that they were almost ready for launching within a few days." Note the redundant negative contained in *quin:* F. 185, 2, and 188, 6; P. II., 156-158.

paucis diebus: time *within which* is expressed by the abl. or by *intra* or *inter* with acc.: F. 82, 2; P. 85 (b).

collaudatis: bring out the force of *con* in translation.

quid velit: dependent questions are put in the subjunctive: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

portum Itium: probably *Boulogne (Gesoriacum)* is meant. At the head of the harbour of Boulogne there is a small French village by the name of *Isques.* Others say *Ambleteuse;* others still say *Wissant.*

quo ex portu : often the antecedent is expressed in the relative clause.

milium triginta : a Roman *passus* was a double step from the *toe* of the left to the *toe* of the left, *i.e.*, two steps, and measured 4 ft. 10½, so that a Roman mile would be 1,000 *passus* or 1618 yards.

huic rei: "for carrying out this object."

expeditis: "unencumbered with baggage," opposed to *impeditus*.

CHAPTER III.

haec civitas : i.e. of the Treveri.

plurimum—valet: "is the most powerful." Strictly *plurimum* is a neut. cognate acc. used adverbially.

supra : B. II., 24 ; III., 11.

Indutiomarus was opposed to the Romans. Caesar induced the leading men of the state to side with *Cingetorix*, the son-in-law, but rival of *Indutiomarus*. The latter took up arms against the Romans, but was slain by Labienus : B. V., 7.

alter : Cingetorix. Distinguish *alter* and *alius*.

cognitum est—venit : since the action expressed by *cognitum est* would be over before that expressed by *venit*, it would be natural to expect the pluperfect, *cognitum erat*. The Latin idiom, however, with *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul ac*, *simul atque*, all meaning, "as soon as," requires the *perfect historical*, not the *pluperfect* as might be expected from the succession of the actions indicated by these conjunctions.

gererentur : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

cogere, join this with *instituit*, "set about collecting."

iisque : the *-que* joins *cogere* and *parare*.

Arduennam : the word is from the Keltic *ar-denn*, "the deep," or from *ard*, "hard," and *venna*, "a pasture" : now the forest of *Ardennes*, a vast forest in the N. W. of France and Belgium. The forest of *Arden* at Stratford is part of the same wood.

ingenti magnitudine : abl. of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).

nonnulli : distinguish in meaning *nonnulli* "some" : *nulli non*, "every" ; so, also *non nemo*, *nemo non ; non nunquam*, *nunquam non*. *non nusquam*, *nusquam non*.

privatim : "individually."

civitati consulere : distinguish in meaning *consulere aliquem*, *consulere alicui*, *consulere in aliquem*.

veritus ne : F. 185, 3 ; P. II., 154.

sese : oblique narration is often introduced with *dixit* or some similar word omitted. Give rules for *oblique* narration : F. 205-209 ; P. 106. Change this into *direct* narration.

quo facilius : why not *ut facilius ?* F. 183, 5 ; P. II., 26.

laberetur : literally "might fall off" from their allegiance, i.e., "might revolt."

in sua potestate : "at his mercy."

CHAPTER IV.

dicerentur : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

evocaverat scil. *Caesar.*

in officio : "in allegiance."

nihilo tamen secius : "none the less however." The comparative *secius* is rare because the positive *secus* has a comparative meaning. *secus* is from *sequor* and primarily means "after," then "less," so that *nihilo secius* means "less by nothing," *i.e.* nevertheless.

quod—valere : "because he was of opinion that this was done by him (Caesar), not merely according to the deserts of this one (*Cingetorix*), but also he thought it was of great advantage that the influence of that one should be very great among his own countrymen." Note that *qūum—tum* =*et—et.—merito* : F. 71, 3.—*magni* : F. 150, 2 ; 166, 3 ; P. 81 (g).

perspexisset : virtual *oblique* narrative, hence subjunctive in dependent clause : F. 206, 4 ; P. 106. It may be explained as causal subj., *cuum*= *cum eius* : F. 198, 4 ; P. 99, (g) iii.

graviter tulit : "greatly annoyed."

qui=quippe qui : "whereas he had already been" : F. 198, 4, Note : P. 99, (g) iii.

inimico animo : abl. of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).

hoc dolori : "at this grievance." —*exarsit* from *exardesco.*

CHAPTER V.

Meldis : the *Meldi* or *Meldae* were a people bordering on *Gallia Belgica.* Their territory lay at the junction of the *Sequana* (*Seine*), and the *Arar* (*Marne*).

revertisse : in the present and derived tenses *revertor* is the form : in the perfect and derived tenses the active form alone is used in the ante-Augustan writers. Distinguish in meaning *revertor*, to return on one's way, and *redeo*, to return after attaining one's object.

obsidum loco: when joined with the genitive, *loco* has a semi-prepositional force, "instead of," "as." So we have *in numero*: cp. *criminis loco*, "as a charge," *praemii loco*, "as a reward." It seems a substitute for the dative of purpose, which, however, is restricted to semi-abstract nouns.

quod—verebatur: when does *quod* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

quum—abesset: when does *quum* take the indicative and when subjunctive? F. 203; 188, 3; 196, 7; P. 99 (f), (g) and (i).

CHAPTER VI.

Dumnorix had conspired against the Romans in 58 B.C., and was pardoned by the entreaties of his brother Divitiacus (B. I., 20). Fearing that he might a second time stir up strife, Caesar desired to take him to Britain. His name is said to be derived from *domun-rig*, "king of the world."

antea: B. I., 3, 18.

in primis: "particularly."

quod—cognoverat: give the syntax of *quod*: F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

eum, scil. *esse*.

animi—auctoritatis: genitive of description: F. 130, 7, 8; P. 81 (e).

accedebat huc: "there was the further consideration that," literally, "to this was added that." The subject of *accedebat* is the clause *quod dixerat* and *sibi deferri* is in apposition to *quod* governed by *dixerat*.

graviter ferebant: as the Aedui annually elected a magistrate called *Vergobretus*, so called from the Keltic *Feor-go-breith*, "a man for judging," or *Guerg-breath*, "strong in judgment," they naturally were annoyed that this right of election had been taken out of their hands: B. I., 16. Caesar (B. VII., 33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no person could be elected, if a living member of the family held the post.

neque: "and yet—not."

recusandi—causa: "to protest or urge any plea against it."

quod timeret: gives not Caesar's reasons but those of Dumnorix: "because, he said, he feared." F. 198, 2; P. 99, (g), I.

religionibus: "religious scruples." The root—LIG (cp. ligare), points to the *binding* or *constraining* force of the unseen world.

id: the request to be left behind.

sevocare: "to hold secret meetings": from *se, vocare* to call apart to some spot.

coepit: what verbs are perfect-present? F. 145; P. 72 (a), (b). Explain the construction in *principes sollicitari coepti sunt; principes sollicitare coepit.*

territare: either a historical infinitive or supply *coepit.* Bring out the force of the *frequentative.* F. 303 (b); P. 75, iii.

fieri, scil., *dixit.* Note the *litotes* in *non sine causa.*

nobilitate: abl. of separation. F. 158, 2; P. 85 (h).

in—Galliae: "in the presence of the Gauls": cp. *in conspectu imperatoris:* B. II., 25.

interficere—vereretur: verbs of fearing take the infinitive in the sense "to be afraid," "not to have the courage" to do anything.—*interficere,* to kill in any manner, and from any motive: *necare,* implies cruelty or injustice.

fidem—interponere: "he pledged his own word to the rest," *i.e.,* to those not in the power of Caesar.

iusiurandum and *iuramentum,* a civil oath: *sacramentum,* a military oath by which the soldier binds himself to serve the State.

CHAPTER VII.

quod—tribuerat: B. I., 33. Explain the indicative with *quod:* F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

posset: scil. *Caesar eum coercere et deterrere.*

longius: "too far": F. 58, 5.

amentiam: "a person is said to be *amens* when he acts without reason like an idiot: he is said to be *demens* when he acts like a madman."—Döderlein.

prospiciendum: scil, *statuebat.*

ne—posset: scil. *amentia:* "to prevent his folly harming him or the state to any degree": —*ne:* F. 185, 3; P. II., 29. —*quid:* acc. of extent or degree.

itaque commoratus: "therefore *seeing* he had to stay": or some take it "*during* his stay."

Corus: the N. W. wind: also written *Caurus:* unfavourable to any one setting out from Boulogne.

partem: acc. of extent. F. 69, 9; P. 83 (c).

temporis=anni

dabat operam: "he was careful."

milites=pedites: as often in Caesar seeing that the *foot* formed the main strength of the Romans: see Introduction, *Army.*

conscendere in naves: we also find in Caesar *conscendere naves.*

impeditis animis: "when their attention was distracted": cp. Cic Leg., 1, 3, 8, *impedito animo.*

insciente Caesare : "without Caesar's knowledge : " abl. absolute.

domum : explain construction : F. 85, 1 ; P. II., 93, (a).

intermissa—postpositis : "giving up his departure and every thing else."

retrahi imperat : the more usual construction would be *ut retrahatur* : F. 181, 3 ; P. II., 27, 28.

si faciat : "if he should offer resistance."

pro sano : "like a sane man."

praesentis, scil. *Caesaris.*

neglexisset : what would this be in direct narrative?

manu : "in a hand to hand fight" : cp. Livy II., 46; *pugna iam ad manus venerat.*

civitatis : predicate genitive : F. 124 ; P. 81 (a).

CHAPTER VIII.

continente : words in—*ans*,—*ens*, when used as substantive or as actual participle, especially in the construction of the abl. abs. have *e*—in the abl. sing. We have with *continens*, however, *continenti* and *continente.*

pro tempore et pro re : "according as time and circumstances would permit."

pari numero quem = eodem numero quem : *i.e.* 2,000 : ch. 5.

solis occasu : another rendering is *ad solis occasum.* The date of the first expedition is fixed at the 18th or 20th of July.

Africo : called by the Greeks Λίψ, as blowing from Libya. The S.W. wind is still called by the Italians *Africo* or *Gherbino.*

intermisso : "having calmed down."

longius : Caesar probably passed the South Foreland and on the return of the tide he made his way to the shore.

remis contendit—caperet : "he strove to reach by rowing." As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy contends that Caesar started from the *estuary of the Somme*, and landed at the beach of *Pevensey*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommsen favors the idea that the infantry embarked at *Ambleteuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Griz-Nez* (Hist. of Rome, IV., 7). Strabo also gives *portus Itius* as the place of embarkation on the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from Gesoriacum (*Boulogne*), and the cavalry at *Ambleteuse.*

admodum : properly, "according to measure" *i.e.* "in as great a measure as can be." In combination with numerals it denotes *approximation* and occurs frequently in Livy and Curtius. In Cicero we find it only

in the phrase *nihil admodum*, "in reality, nothing at all." Translate: "was highly praiseworthy."

non—labore; "since they made no relaxation in their exertions in rowing."

accessum—navibus: "all the ships reached Britain:" for the dative, See F. 164, 2, note; P. 82 (d), ii.

cum: "though": F. 196, 7; P. 99 (i). iii.

annotinis: scil. *navibus:* some say "added to the ships used in the former year": others, "added to the provision ships."

quas—fecerat: "which each one had chartered for his own service." Some explain *sui commodi* as governed by *causā* understood. It is not usual to have the omission of *causa* except with the genitive of the gerund. It is then explained as an imitation of the Greek idiom when ἕνεκα or ὑπέρ is omitted: cp. IV., 17: *si naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae.* The omission of *causa* with a substantive is perhaps nowhere else found in a prose writer.

amplius octingentis: the nominative *octingentae* would be more regular: P. III., 85 (f), and II., 123, c., 2.

ac—abdiderant: distinguish in meaning *in loca superiora* and *in locis superioribus, se abdere.*

CHAPTER IX.

exposito exercitu: the full expression is *exercitum ex navibus in terram exponere.*

castris governed by *idoneo:* what adjectives govern a dative? F. 60, 2; P. 82 (e), v.

consedissent: subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

cohortibus decem: not a legion, but two cohorts from each of the five legions.

qui—essent: "to guard the vessels": for the two datives: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

de tertia vigilia: "in the course of the third watch": the expression implies that the third watch had been set. The Romans divided the night into *four* watches: *prima vigilia* from 6 to 9 p.m.: *secunda vigilia* from 9–12 p.m.: *tertia vigilia* from 12–3 a.m., and *quarta vigilia* from 3–6 a.m.

veritus navibus: "fearing for the ships." The dative is not common with *vereor*, though common enough with *metuo* and *timeo.*

molli atque aperto: "smooth and clear of rocks."

praesidio: dat. of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c). *navibus* governed by *prae*—in *praefecit.* F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

equitatu—essedis: abl. of instrument.

conspicatus est: "caught a glimpse of": the word *conspicor* is common in Caesar and Plautus: not common in Terence: never found in Lucretius, Vergil, or Cicero.

ad flumen: the *Stour* near Wye, the north bank of which is much higher (*locus superior*) than the south and would thus form a natural defence.

se in silvas abdiderunt: distinguish in meaning *se in silvas abdiderunt*: "they hid themselves by fleeing into the woods!" and *se in silvis abdiderunt*: "they hid themselves when in the woods."

opere: explained afterwards by *crebris arboribus succisis*. Such breastworks were often made in the American Civil War by felling trees.

ipsi—propugnabant: "they in scattered bands throw their javelins out of the woods." Others translate: "they came out of the woods in small bodies to fight"; but compare B. VII., 86: *ex turribus propugnantes.*

testudine facta: "forming a *testudo.*" This movement was done by the soldiers of the inner files locking their shields above their heads, while the outer files protected the sides. The resemblance of the locked shields to a tortorse shell (*testudo*) gave it the name.

longius: "too far."

prosequi: "to follow up the pursuit," "to continue in the pursuit." In the next chapter *persequor* is "to make a pursuit," "to pursue."

munitioni castrorum: "for fortifying the camp": by digging a trench and throwing up a mound. As this was indispensable, *castra munire* has often the meaning of *castra locare, castra ponere.*

CHAPTER X.

postridie eius diei: literally "on the morrow of that day."—*postridie* =*posteri die* seems to be a *locative form* for *postero die*, an ablative in ordinary Latin. The genitive *eius diei* is pleonastic and may have arisen from the analogy of the Greek in which ὕστερος takes a genitive: cp. B. I., 47. —*pridie eius diei:* Tacit. Ann. XV. 54: Tacit. Hist. I., 26, *postero iduum* = ὑστέρα εἰδῶν.

milites=*pedites*: as we find elsewhere in Latin.

in expeditionem: "as a flying column."

aliquantum itineris: partitive genitive: "some distance on their journey."

extremi: "the rear" of the detachment sent out by Caesar were still seen by those remaining in the camp.

qui nunciarent=*ut ei nunciarent*: F. 184, 1; P. II., 25.

afflictas: "shattered."

in litore eiectas esse: "were stranded on the shore." Some read *in litus*. The difference between the ablative and the accusative is that the latter would simply imply that they were driven on shore while the former would express that they were still remaining there.

subsisterent: "held," "kept them in position."

concursu: "collision."

incommodum: a mild way of stating the actual loss that occurred in consequence of the disaster.

CHAPTER XI.

legiones: so *milites = pedites*.

desistere itinere: abl. of separation: F. 158, 2; P. 85 (h).

revertitur: see note V., 5.

coram perspicit: "he sees with his own eyes."

sic ut: *sic* is here superfluous. The regular construction would be to omit *sic ut* and use the accusative with the infinitive in the clause *reliquae—viderentur*, since it really depends on *cognoverat*.

negotio: "trouble."

fabros: these were not necessarily a part of the legion, though they frequently accompanied it. They were a sort of Engineer Corps who looked after the mechanical work to be done, and were under the direction of the *praefectus fabrum*. Here, in the absence of the regular *fabri*, Caesar calls for volunteers out of the legion.

iubet—scribit: note the force of these presents.

nullae operae ac laboris: "though it was a wearisome and laborious undertaking: F. 124; P. 81 (a).

subduci: *subducere naves* opposed to *deducere naves*.

praesidio navibus: for the two datives: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

eodem: to the fortified place lately taken from the enemy.

summa imperii: "the whole of the command."

huic—intercesserant: "constant wars had sprung up between this one and the other states": for the dative *huic*: F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

permoti: in presence of the Romans the Britons forgot their broils and appointed Cassivellaunus a leader.

CHAPTER XII.

quos—dicunt: "of whom the inhabitants state there is a tradition that they were born in the island itself." The original inhabitants of Britain belonged to the great Keltic family that occupied in Caesar's time all the western part of Europe. The belief that they were *autochthones* seems to

have been common among the Romans: Tacit. Agr. II.: *ceterum Britanniam qui mortales initio coluerint, indigenae an advecti. ut inter barbaros, parum compertum.* So also were the Carians according to Herodotus (B. I. 171); the Sicani (Thucy. VI. 2); the Athenians (Eurip. Ion, 29).

maritima pars scil. *incolitur ab iis.* So also Tacit. Agr. II.: *proximi Gallis et similes sunt;*

nominibus: that is, there were tribes in Britain and on the continent with the same name as the Atrebates, Belgae and Parisii.

hominum: "of the population."

fere Gallicis consimilia: with *Gallicis* scil. *aedificiis:* "like in the main these in Gaul.

taleis examinatis: "iron bars of ascertained weight." A good deal of discussion has arisen on this passage, because the Greek paraphrast renders the word *taleis* by δακτυλίοις, "finger rings." By comparing the present passages with B. VII. 33, we find *taleae* used in the sense of "bar" or "beam."—*examinatis*: cp. *examen (=exagimen)*, "the beam of a balance:" so *ala=axilla*: *mala=maxilla.*

nummo: Herodotus calls the current coin νόμισμα (B. I. 94; III. 56). According to Aristotle (Ethics v. 8) the word is derived from νόμος because the value is fixed by *law* (νόμος). It is probable that the Romans introduced the word *nummus* from the Sicilian word νοῦμος, a name given to a small coin worth about five cents of our money. The earliest mint established at Rome was in 344 B.C.

plumbum album: "tin." Caesar here reverses facts. The *tin* mines of Britain are found near the coast chiefly in Cornwall, Devon and Wales; while *iron* is abundant in Stafford, Shropshire, Derby, parts of York and Durham. The Scilly Islands were called *Cassiterides* or *Tin Islands* from the Greek κασσίτερος, "tin." It is strange that Mr. Crutwell, of Oxford (History of Roman Literature, p. 192), should make the mistake in supposing that *plumbum album* meant *lead.* "The existence of lead and iron were known to him (Caesar); he does not allude to tin, but its occurrence could hardly have been unknown to him."

ejus: refers to iron. According to official statistics, the gross annual produce of iron is 3,600,000 tons, while *tin* amounts to about 10,500 tons. The fact that Caesar gained his information from the people on the coast, where iron is scarce, may have led to this mistake.

aere importato: though we find *copper* in Cornwall, Devon, Stafford and Anglesey, the mines were not much worked till the last century.

materia: "timber."

fagum: fagus in Vergil and in Pliny is the *beech* while φηγός in Theophrastus is the *oak.* Both words are from φαγεῖν, "to eat," indicating the use of the nuts as food for primitive man. Crutwell (Hist. of Roman

Literature p. 192, note 3) says: "I am told by Professor Rolleston that Caesar is here mistaken. The pine, by which he presumably meant the Scotch fir, certainly existed in the first century B.C., and as to the *beech*, Burnham beeches were then fine young trees."

leporem—putant: it is not known how this belief originated. The hare was forbidden under the Mosaic law (Levit. xi., 6); possibly the absence of corn in Britain may have made the others unpalatable.

non fas = nefas: "impious."

loca frigoribus: on account of its insular position and the influence of the gulf stream. Tacitus says (Agr. 12) *caelum crebris imbribus ac nebulis foedum*: *asperitas frigorum abest.*

CHAPTER XIII.

natura: "by nature," *i.e.* "in shape." Caesar may have gained his knowledge of the shape of Britain from the natives or from the then extant works of the Greek writers since the island was not circumnavigated by the Romans till A.D. 84, fully a century after his time: cp. Tacit. Agr. 10: *hanc oram novissimi maris tunc primum Romana classi circumventa insulam esse Brittanniam affirmant.* Strabo (IV. 5, 1) mentions also the fact that Britain is triangular and says that its longest side is parallel to Keltica and is 4,300 *stadia* in length (about 500 miles). Keltica was a name applied to the country from the mouth of the Rhine to the Pyrenees. Pomponius Mela (III., 6) compares Britain in shape to Siclly and says that one side faces Gaul, and another side, Germany.

Cantium: now Kent, which is said to mean "corner."

quo—appelluntur: "for which almost all the ships from Gaul make;" with *appellere navem*, cp. the Gk. κέλλειν νῆα.

inferior corresponds to *alter* in *alter angulus*.

hoc—alterum, scil. *latus.*

quingenta: the measurement from North Foreland to Land's End is 344 British or 356 Roman miles. Strabo's statement was evidently taken from this statement of Caesar.

alterum vergit scil. *latus*: cp. Tacit. Ag. 10: *Britannia in orientem Germaniae, iu occidentem Hispaniae obtenditur*: "Britain lies opposite to Germany on the East, to spain on the West." The erroneous views held by the Romans with regard to the position of Britain arose from their innate dread of long ocean voyages.

qua ex parte: Tacitus (Agr. 34) says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. The word Hibernia is said to be derived from the Keltic *Eriu* or *Iveriu*, meaning "Western." (Max Müller Science of Language, Vol. I. p. 284.)

dimidio minor: "half the size," literally, "less by a half. The area of Great Britain is said to be 77,370 square miles; that of Ireland about 30,370 sq. miles.

pari spatio atque=eodem spatio atque: "the same distance as:" abl. characteristic: F. 131, 9; P. 85 (c): so *pari numero*: B. v. Chap. VIII. The distance from Carnsore Point in Southern Ireland and St. David's Head in Wales is 53 miles: between Fairhead in Northern Ireland and Mull of Cantire in Scotland the distance is 13 miles: the distance from Calais to Dover is 21 miles.

Mona: some have supposed the *Isle of Man* to be here referred to, since the position of that Island is midway between Britain and Ireland. As, however, there is no doubt about *Mona* in Tacitus (Agr. 14; Ann. XIV. 29) referring to Anglesey, Caesar may have been misinformed of its position. Besides the Isle of Man was properly called in Latin *Monopia*. According to Taylor (Words and Places), the word *Mona* is from the Keltic *monn* "a district." So we have *Maine*, *Mayenne* in France, *Mantua* in Italy, *La Mancha* in Spain, *Mansfield*, *Manchester*, the *Menai* Straits in England. Others say from Welsh *mon* "alone," or *menedh* "an island."

complures—insulae: Caesar, no doubt, refers to the Hebrides, Orkney or Shetland Islands, but wrongly places them in the channel between Britain and Ireland.

nonnulli: probably Greek geographers whose works have perished.

bruma=brevima=brevissima: scil. *dies*: the winter solstice. This, of course, is untrue.

certis—mensuris: "by accurate measures made by the water clock." The *clepsydra* (κλεψύδρα) is meant. The water clock was said to have been invented about 460 B.C. Its use was common among the Greeks. It consisted ordinarily of two globes of glass cemented together, the lower one receiving the water and having the divisions of the hours marked on it.

ut—fert opinio: "according to their belief"; cp. Cic. pro Fonteio 13, *ut opinio mea fert*: "as I believe."

septingentorum milium: the west coast of Britain is 590 British or 610 Roman miles. For descriptive genitive: F. 130, 7, 8: P. 81 (e).

tertium, scil., *latus*.

hoc: the west coast of Britain is 550 British or 570 Roman miles. This is short of the actual.

CHAPTER XIV.

humanissimi: cp. Shakespeare Henry VI., 1, 4, 7.

> Kent, in the commentaries of Caesar writ,
> Is termed the civil'st place in all the isle.

interiores plerique: "the majority of the people of the inland district": *plerique* means "most people" or "the majority": *plurimi*, both "most people" or "a great many."

vitro: "woad," still cultivated in France and till *indigo* took its place much used in producing blue dyes.

hoc : ablative of means.

horridiore aspectu : ablative of description: F. 131, 9; P. 85 (c). So also *capillo promisso.*

deni duodenique : "companies of ten and in other cases twelve." We would say "ten or twelve." This statement is generally regarded as untrue.

CHAPTER XV.

ita tamen ut = *ita tamen conflixerunt ut.*

omnibus partibus = *in omnibus partibus* : "in every quarter."

cupidius : "too eagerly."

intermisso spatio : "after an interval of time had elapsed."

se—eiecerunt : "they sallied forth." The impetuous character of the Kelts was as strongly marked in Caesar's days as in later times.

in statione : "on sentry."

iis primis : the first cohorts of the legion regularly contained the finest troops.

inter se : "apart."

per medios—perruperunt scil. *hostes* : "the enemy made a dash between them." These cohorts had probably not been on the first expedition.

CHAPTER XVI.

cum—dimicaretur : "when the battle was going on in sight of all and in front of the camp." For *quum* : F. 203; P. 99, (f), v.—*sub oculis* = *in conspectu.*

intellectum est : "it was evident to us." Supply *nobis* dat. or *a nobis* : F. 164, 2, note: P. 82 (d), ii.

nostros = *milites legionarios.* —*sub oculis* = *in conspectu.*

ab signis discedere : "to desert the standards" would be a violation of the *sacramentum* or military oath.

minus aptos : "less effective" (than others would be).

equites—dimicare scil. *intellectum est.*

consulto—cederent : "often purposely yielded."

quum—removissent : "when once they had drawn away."

dispari praelio : the heavy body armour of the Romans would hamper their movements, while the Briton armed (Tacit. Agr. 36) with a long sword and small buckler, would skilfully elude the blows of his antagonist and by his superior length of weapon would be more effective.

et cedentibus et sequentibus scil. *Britannis*: "to the Britons while retreating and pursuing." The meaning is that when the Britons and Romans used cavalry the danger was equalized, but when the Britons used chariots they were at an advantage.

accedebat huc ut: "to this was added the fact that."

stationes dispositas: "outposts stationed here and there."

deinceps: "in succession": so also *manceps, terticeps, anceps*, old nominatives used adverbially.

CHAPTER XVII.

rari: "infrequently."

lenius = minus acriter: "with less spirit."

proelio lacessere: "to draw out to battle:" distinguish this from *proelium lacessere*: "to skirmish."

tres legiones: this is an unusually large number to send on a foraging expedition. Perhaps the lesson they had learned on a previous occasion (B. IV. 32) had made them more guarded.

Caio Trebonio: Caius Trebonius was one of Caesar's *legati*, and distinguished himself by his personal bravery when the winter quarters of Cicero were attacked by the German horse: B. VI. 40.

advolaverunt, scil., *hostes*.

sic uti—absisterent: i.e., *sic advolaverunt = tam celeriter advolaverunt*: "with such impetuosity they rushed forward that they came close up to the standards of the legions." The meaning is that the enemy dashed against those that had ventured outside the ranks to forage but did not dare to commence a regular engagement with the three legions.—*signis legionibusque = signis legionum* by *hendiadys*.

neque = et non

subsidio scil. *legionum*: "to the support of the legions:" for the case see F. 105, 9, note: P. 85 (k), iii. Translate, "as long as the cavalry trusting to the support (of the legions), now that they saw the legions in their rear, drove the enemy before them."

neque—dederunt scil., *nostri milites*: "our soldiers gave them no opportunity either to unite their forces, or to form in line, or to leap down from their war chariots."—*sui colligendi*: F. 171; P. II., 141. *Aut* after *neque* is more emphatic than a second *neque* would be. —*unquam* and *usquam* are properly used in sentences that are negative or *virtually* negative.

summis copiis: "with all their forces united." Some translate it by "with a numerous force." The Greek paraphrast renders it by πολλῇ δυνάμει.

CHAPTER XVIII.

fines Cassivellauni : across the Thames in what is now Middlesex and Buckinghamshire.

uno omnino loco=*in uno omnino loco.* It is difficult to say which spot is meant here. *Sunbury*, *Conway*, *Westminster*, *Wallingford* and *Kingston* are given by different authorities.

hoc i.e. *in hoc loco.*

alteram=*adversam* : "on the opposite."

praefixis : "driven into the sloping bank," while *defixae* refers to those driven into the bed of the stream.

perfugis : a person is said to be *perfuga* with regard to those to whom he flees : *transfuga*, with regard to those whom he abandons.

praemisso : sent up and down the south bank of the Thames to guard the advance of the legion, and to dislodge those who may be waiting to oppose them.

ea celeritate—ierunt : "but our soldiers pushed forward at so rapid a pace, and with so violent an onset, though their heads alone were out of the water, that, etc." : *capite solo* : abl. of measure : F. 58, 6 ; P. 85 (g).

CHAPTER XIX.

ut supra : B. V., 17.

contentionis : "of continuing (the war)."

amplioribus : "the most of."

millibus—quattuor essedariorum : if each chariot contained six men besides the driver, as it seems they did, there would be about six hundred chariots.

servabat=*observabat* : "kept watching."

locis=*in locis.*

iis regionibus : ablative of separation : "from that district."

viis semitisque : *via* is the regular road : *semita* is a by-path.

et confligebat : "and attended with these he was wont to engage with great danger to our men."

hoc metu : "from fear of this," as *hoc dolore* (B. V., chap. 4).

relinquebatur ut : "the only alternative left to Caesar was" or "all that remained for Caesar was."

CHAPTER XX.

labore atque itinere : "by toilsome marching" : *hendiadys.*

Trinobantes occupied Essex and Suffolk. The best way of translating this involved sentence is to break it up into at least four sentences.

"Meanwhile the Trinobantes, about the most powerful state of that district, send ambassadors to Caesar and promise to surrender themselves to him, and to obey his orders. From that (state) the youthful Mandubratius, who had attached himself to Caesar, had come to him in continental Gaul. Imanuentius, the father of this (Mandubratius), had held sovereign power in that state and had been slain by Cassivelaunus, (while) he himself (Mandubratius) had escaped death by flight. They (the Trinobantes) ask (Caesar) to defend Mandubratius from all wrong-doing on the part of Cassivellaunus and to send to the state (a man) to rule it and to exercise sovereign power." See remarks on the differences between Latin and English idiom. F. p. 230; P. page 210. —*ex qua* scil. *civitate.* —*pollicentur sese—facturos*: F. 110, 1; P. II., 13. —*qui praesit=talem ut praesit*: F. 184, 1; P. II., 34, 55.

his—imperat: what two meanings and what two constructions has *impero?*

ad numerum: "to the full amount."

CHAPTER XXI.

Trinobantibus defensis, the kindness shown by Caesar to the Trinobantes gained over the other tribes to the side of Rome. The *Cenimagni* inhabited *Bedford* and *Cambridge;* the *Segontiaci*, probably *Berkshire;* the *Ancalites, Oxford* and *Buckingham; Bibroci, Berkshire;* the *Cassi, Hertfordshire.* This defection was ruinous to the British cause; even the Cassi, the state over which Cassivellaunus ruled, joined in it.

oppidum: generally supposed to be *Verulamium* or St. Albans.

satis magnus: "quite a large."

autem: "now."

natura atque opere: "by its natural position and especially by fortification."

oppugnare, "to storm": *expugnare*, "to take by storm."

paulisper: used of past and future time: *parumper*, generally of future time.

multi scil. *Britanni*: "many of the Britons."

CHAPTER XXII.

in—locis: about St. Alban's.

ad mare: "on the sea coast."

quibus regionibus: "over which district": for dative F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

castra navalia: B. v., chap. 2.

constituisset—superesset—intelligeret: explain these subjunctives.

id posse : "and that this time might easily be wasted," if further delay was made. The experience of the first expedition had taught Caesar the danger of waiting too long in Britain.

quid penderet : *tributum* was a tax paid by each individual through the tribe in proportion to a man's property : *vectigal* taxes levied in any other way. Caesar left no garrison in Britain and the tax was, consequently, never paid. The conquest of Britain was really begun under the Emperor Claudius, A.D. 43, but not completed till the reign of Domitian about 81 A.D.

CHAPTER XXIII.

refectas scil. *esse* : "had been repaired."

his deductis, scil., *navibus*.

duabus—commeatibus : "in two trips :" ablative of manner.

sic accidit uti : "it so happened that." F. 182, 4 ; P. 99 (b), ii.

desideraretur : "was lost."

inanes : these were of two kinds, both those used in the first trip returning for another load and those made on the continent and sent across by Labienus.

ne—excluderetur : "that he might not be prevented from sailing by the time of the year."

aequinoctium suberat : Caesar sailed from Britain shortly after the middle of September, so that he had been in the island two months or over.

necessario—collocovit : "he necessarily stowed away his soldiers in narrower compass than usual."

solvisset scil. *naves*.

CHAPTER XXIV.

subductis : "drawn up on shore" for the winter by means of rollers.

concilio : assemblies of the whole nation were often held as in B. I. 30.

Samarobriva : from Samara, *Somme*, briva, *bridge ;* so that the word means *Sommebridge* : now *Amiens*.

Angustius provenerat : "had turned out rather short." The plural *siccitates* refers to the "seasons of dry weather :" cp. *frigora* : B. V. Chap. 12.

aliter ac : after *alius*, *similis*, *aeque*, *perinde* and comparatives, *ac*=than. —*alteram*, note that *secundus* is rarely used for *second*.

proxime : "very recently" said of time, though it commonly is said of place.

trans Padum : speaking from the standpoint of Rome.

inopiae—mederi posse: "could he remedy the scarcity of corn." Distinguish *medeor* "to heal," referring to the skill of the physician and *sanor*, to the disease.

millibus—centum: this probably means that the camps were situated within a circle, having a radius of 100 miles, so that no two camps would be more than 200 miles from each other.

CHAPTER XXV.

summo loco natus: "born of the highest rank": abl. of origin.

huic indirect object after *restituerat.*

tertium—regnantem: "in the third year of his reign" literally "this one reigning now the third year." Note the present participle.

quod—pertinebat: "because (the interests of a) great many were involved" literally "because the matter concerned a good many": supply *ea res* with *pertinebat.*

hos—mittere scil. *iubet*: "he orders (L. Plancus) to take into custody and to send to him these by whose instigation he had now learned that Tasgetius had been murdered." Note the indicative in *cognoverat* scil *Caesar.*

CHAPTER XXVI.

diebus—quibus: literally, "within about fifteen days in which" *i.e.* "about fifteen days after."

ventum est scil. *Caesari = Caesar venit*: F. 164, 2, note; P. 82 (d), ii.

quum praesto fuissent: "though they had presented themselves."

Indutiomari—impulsi: this chief had been offended (B. v., chap. 4) by the degree of power given by Caesar to his rival Mandubratius, and had become a formidable rival.

oppugnatum scil. *castra*: for supine: F. 174; 2 and 3; P. 105.

aliqui: less common than *aliquis*: F. 132; P. 95, i.

CHAPTER XXVII.

ex Hispania = Hispaniensis.

sese: put this speech into direct narration. The order is, *sese confiteri, pro beneficiis Caesaris in se, (se) debere plurimum ei* &c.

ei = sibi i.e. *Ambiorigi.*

obsidum numero: cp. *loco obsidum.*

de oppugnatione: "in regard to the storming of the camp."

suaque—imperia : "and that the conditions of his authority were such."

porro : "now" passing on to a fresh statement.

alteri legioni subsidio : for the two datives : F. 134, 1 ; P. 82 (c) and (d)

quibus satisfecerit : "and since he had done enough for them in respect of his duty to his country." Cicero (Orat. Part. 22) defines *pietas* : *iustitia erga parentes pietas nominatur.*

habere—Caesaris : "he had regard to what was due from him in return for the favours of Caesar."

saluti consulat : distinguish *aliquem consulere, alicui consulere, in aliquem consulere.*

conductam scil. *mercede* : "hired for pay."

hanc scil. *manum.*

ipsorum esse consilium : "that it was for themselves to consider:" *ipsorum* refers to Titurius and Cotta.

eductos—deducere : "to take the soldiers out of their winter quarters and conduct them either to Cicero or to Labienus."

quod quum faciat : "in doing this he was both acting in the interest of his state in relieving it from the (Roman) winter quarters." In this chapter carefully account for the tenses in *oblique narration.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

re : "news."

etsi—existimabant : explain the mood in *existimabant.* F. 196 ; P. 99 (i).

consilium : "a council of war" consisting of the *legati, tribuni* and *primorum ordinum centuriones.*

nihil—existimabant : "thought that nothing should be done rashly, nor should they leave winter quarters without the order of Caesar."

quantasvis—docebant : "they told them that forces of the Germans, however great, could be kept back, in case that the winter quarters were fortified." —*munitis hibernis* : abl. abs. = *si hiberna munita essent.*

rem—testimonio : "what had happened was a proof of this:" referring to the clause introduced by *quod.* Note the dative of purpose which is confined to abstract or semi-abstract nouns.

re—premi : "that there was trouble about supplies."

quid esse levius aut turpius : rhetorical question in oblique narrative. What would it be in direct narrative?

CHAPTER XXIX.

contra ea=*contra*: "on the other hand."

sero: "when too late."—*facturos* scil. *esse se.*

clamitabat: "kept shouting out:" explain the force of the frequentative. F. 303, (e); P. 75.

aliquid calamitatis: "some misfortune:" partitive genitive: F. 69, 10; P. 81 (b).

non—spectare scil. *se*: "he had in view not the advice of the enemy but the real state of affairs."

magno dolori: see note on *testimonio*, last chapter.

Ariovisti mortem: Caesar nowhere tells us when or where Ariovistus died.

tot—extincta: "after receiving so many reverses, it (Gaul) had been reduced under the sway of the Roman people after its former glory in military greatness had been extinguished."

quis—persuaderet: "who would believe this?" literally, "who would persuade this to himself?" Note the rhetorical question.

sine certa re: "without sure information," or "unless on sure grounds.',

suam—tutam: "his own advice was safe for either emergency."

si—perventuros: "if no greater difficulty came in their way, without any danger they would reach the next legion:" *i.e.*, if the Gauls did not attack them.

unam—salutem: "their only hope of safety was in speedy action."

praesens: "immediate."

longinqua obsidione: ablative absolute: "if the siege were long."

CHAPTER XXX.

in utramque partem: "on both sides" i.e. *pro* and *con.*

primis ordinibus=*centurionibus primorum ordinum*: the *six* centurions of the first cohort of the legion had the name of *primipilani* or *primipilares.* These were members of the council of war.

acriter resisteretur: "a fierce opposition was maintained."

vincite: "have your own way", literally "prevail", "conquer."

is=*talis*: "I am not the one to be" &c.: F. 188, 8, 5; P. II., 34, 35.

hi reposcent: "these men will understand the matter, and if any disaster occur, will demand satisfaction from you, Cotta."—*hi* refers to the soldiers to whom he pointed and who were near enough to hear what was said.

qui intereant: "inasmuch as they, if you would not hinder them, on the day after tomorrow united with (those in the) next winter-quarters, would

certainly bear along with their comrades only their share of impending danger and certainly would not die like outcast and banished men far away from the other (Romans)."

qui=quippe qui.—si—liceat : literally "if it is allowed through you".—*perendino* : probably derived from *πέρην*, *dies*, "the day beyond tomorrow."

CHAPTER XXXI.

consurgitur impersonal passive : "the members rise from the council": so also *pronunciatur* below, "orders are issued."

comprehendunt utrumque : "they grasp the hands of both": Cotta and Sabinus.

rem : "their safety."

dat—manus : "gives way," "yields": offers his hands to be bound or signifies by a gesture that he makes no further resistance.

consumitur—cogeretur : "the remaining part of the night is spent without sleep, since each soldier examined his own effects (to see) what he might be able to carry with him, what part of his winter's stores he would be compelled to leave behind": *circumspiceret* : F. 188, 3; P. 99 (g), ii. *posset—cogeretur* : F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

omnia—augeatur : "every reason is suggested (to prove) why there was no staying without danger, and why the danger would be increased by the lassitude and watches of the soldiers." The meaning is that the soldiers try to convince themselves by plausible arguments that their conduct for leaving was justifiable.

ut—persuasum=ut ei proficiscerentur quibus esset persuasum : literally, "as those would start who were convinced," or "like men convinced." Note the impersonal use of *persuasum esset*. Translate into Latin: *I am convinced.*

agmine—impedimentis : ablative absolute.

CHAPTER XXXII.

vigiliis : "by their not retiring to rest."

bipartito : "at two points."

a milibus—duobus : "about two miles off": for *milia passuum circiter duo ab eo loco.*

opportuno—loco : either the abl. abs. or governed by *in* understood. It is said that such a place is the valley of Lavarges, about two miles above Tongres.

se—demisisset : "had descended": so *erigere agmen*, "to ascend" a hill.

convallis : a valley closely surrounded by hills, at the bottom of which the Romans were caught.

novissimos=agmen novissimum.

iniquissimo : "most unfavourable."

CHAPTER XXXIII.

tum demum ; "then and not till then" : so often in Caesar.

qui—providisset : "inasmuch as he had no foresight" : *qui=quippe qui* or *quum is* : F. 198, 4, note ; P. 99 (g), iii.

trepidare—disponere : historical infinitives.

haec scil. *fecit.*

ut—viderentur : the full construction is *ita fecit ut omnia viderentur deficere eum* : "and he acted in such a way that all his plans seemed to fail him."

quod—coguntur : "a thing which generally is wont to happen to those who are compelled to form their plans on the spur of the moment." —*quod=id quod* : *consuevit* : note the perfect present.

at : "however," "on the other hand" :

qui cogitasset=quippe qui cogitavisset.

auctor : "adviser."

omnia obire : "to attend to all his duties." Supply *officia.*

iusserunt pronuntiare scil. *tribunos et centuriones* : "they ordered the tribunes and centurions to pass the word." Another reading is *pronuntiari,* which is probably correct : "ordered word to be passed."

in orbem : "into a hollow square."

reprehendendum non est : "is not to be criticised."

vulgo : "at all points," "everywhere" : cp. the Greek paraphrast *πάντοθεν.*

CHAPTER XXXIV.

consilium : "presence of mind."

tota acie : ablative of place : "along the whole line."

illorum—praedam : "the booty (of the Romans) belonged to them (the Gauls)" : possessive genitive.

proinde—existimarent : "therefore let them consider" : *existimarent* in oblique, would be *existimate* in direct narration.

duce : Sabinus.

neu=neve=et ne.

levitate armorum : the Gauls were generally armed with a long sword and light buckler and could easily elude the heavily armed legionaries of the Romans.

posse depends on *dixit* understood implied in *iubet.* The command is again taken up in *insequantur.*

CHAPTER XXXV.

iis=*barbaris.*

quum: the indicative is often used with *quum* in the sense of "whenever."

eam partem: the troops that left the circle to charge on the enemy were exposed to attack on all sides. "Meanwhile that portion of the square was unavoidably exposed, and javelins poured in on its unprotected flanks."

quum—coeperant: see note on *quum* above.

conferti: "being so closely packed together": from *confercio.*

conflictati: "though overwhelmed."

horam octavam: about 2 p.m.

primum pilum duxerat: "who had been chief centurion": *i.e.* the first centurion of the first cohort. He was probably now serving as a veteran. These after the expiration of their term of service were called *emeriti* or *evocati.*

in adversum os: "full in the face": cp. *adversa nocte*, "with night in their teeth."

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Cn Pompeium: probably a Gaul who had obtained the Roman *civitas* and adopted the *nomen* and *praenomen* of the Roman noble through whom he obtained it.

rogatum: supine.

sperare—pertineat: "(he said that) he hoped that the request might be obtained, so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned." Note the present infinitive in *posse* depending on *sperare*. What is the usual construction and why is not the usual construction observed here?

ipsi, i.e., Titurius.

communicat—colloquantur: after *communicat* supply "and suggests." Trans.: "sends word to Cotta and suggests that, if he thinks fit, they should withdraw from the fight and together hold a conference with Ambiorix."

sperare—posse: "(he said) that he hoped that he would be able to obtain the request for both his own safety and that of the soldiers."

CHAPTER XXXVII.

quos—tribunos militum=*eos tribunos militum quos.*

propius Ambiorigem: the adverbs *propius*, *proxime*, like the preposition *prope* from which they are formed, often govern the accusative.

iussus abicere—ut faciant imperat.: note the difference between the construction of *jubere* and *imperare.*

condicionibus: "terms;" derived from *con* and *dico*, I say; hence "agreement."

longior consulto: "on purpose somewhat tedious."

ululatum: "war cry": cp. Livy, V., 37: *nata in vanos tumultus gens (Gallorum) truci cantu clamoribusque variis horrendo cuncta compleverant cantu.*

pauci—elapsi: Sabinus and Cotta had a legion and a half, or about 6000 men, as the legion would not have the full complement of soldiers. At least 5000 soldiers must have perished in the battle.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

re demonstrata: "when news of the battle was laid before them."

sui liberandi: gerundive sing., agreeing with *sui* plural: F. 170, 3; P. 104. On the other hand *ulciscendi* is a gerund.: F. 172; P. 103.

nihil—interfici: "that it was not a difficult task for the legion wintering with Cicero to be surprised and slaughtered."—*negotii*: partitive genitive.

cum Cicerone: "under the command of Cicero."

hiemet: why subjunctive? F. 206, 4; P. 106.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Centrones—Geidumnos: small tribes in what is now West Flanders, dependants of the Nervii.

eorum = *Nerviorum.*

huic i.e. Cicero, whose camp was next besieged.

quod = *id quod.*

lignationis—causa: "to procure wood and materials for fortification."

adepti = *si adepti essent*: "if they got this victory."

CHAPTER XL.

mittuntur: note the emphatic position of this word.

pertulissent scil. *eas litteras nuntii*: note the force of *per.*

materia: "timber."

admodum: literally, "up to the amount of": it may mean "fully" or "at least."

excitantur: "are erected."

perficiuntur: note that prepositional compounds of *facio* make the passive regularly in—*ficior.*

multo: really an abl. of difference used adverbially: cp. Greek πολλῷ with comparatives.

deinceps: "one after another," "continuously." The termination is the same as in *particeps*, *princeps.*

opus sunt: in this case *opus* is an indeclinable noun with the force of an adjective: "necessary": *opus* may be used with every case but the dat. of the thing needed. Here *quaecumque* is nominative: so we may also have *quorumcumque opus est*, *quaecumque* (acc.) *opus est*, or *quibuscumque* (abl). *opus est*: the person needing is, however, put in the dative.

pila muralia: these siege pikes were longer and heavier than the ordinary pikes.

contabulantur: "are built up in stories."

pinnae—attexuntur: "notched battlements and breastworks (made scil. *factae*) of woven osiers are attached (to the towers)."

tenuissima valetudine: "of very feeble health": the ablative denotes an *accidental* quality: the genitive, if used, would express a *habitual* quality.

ut—cogeretur: "so that by the rushing of the soldiers (around him) of their own accord, and their pleadings, he was forced to spare himself."

CHAPTER XLI.

qui—habebant: "who had opportunity for an audience and reasons for being well disposed towards Caesar."

potestate: "permission."

oppugnari: "are now being attacked."

Ambiorigem—causa: "for the purpose of gaining credit they point out boastfully that Ambiorix was at hand."

quidquam—praesidii: "any aid": partitive genitive.

eos: Cicero and his troops: *his*, Caesar and the other commanders.

hanc—consuetudinem: this custom of wintering in Gaul.

licere—discedere: "they might go away from their winter quarters without any hindrance, so far as they (the Nervii) were concerned."

velint: for what two reasons is the subjunctive used?

unum modo: "only one thing."

utantur—mittant: the third pers. pl. subjunctive in oblique narration represents second pers. pl. imperative in direct discourse. Thus *se adiutore utantur* in oblique narration = *me adiutore utimini*: "employ me as a mediator."

sperare impetraturos: it is unusual for the pronoun to be omitted with the future inf. after verbs of *hoping*. Most MSS. give *sperare se*. —*se* refers to Cicero.

pro eius iustitia: "in accordance with his sense of justice," "such was his sense of justice."

CHAPTER XLII.

hac spe: the hope of deceiving Cicero as Titurius Sabinus had been deceived.

pedum quindecim: "a rampart nine feet high and a ditch fifteen feet wide." The genitive of description is usual when no adjective is used. Had adjs. been used, what would have been the usual construction?

nulla—copia: "there being no supply of iron implements adapted for this purpose": the ablative absolute: F. 102, 3, Note; P. 85 (o). —*quae esset*=*talis ut esset*.

minus horis tribus: *horis* is the ablative of time within which a thing is done: *minus, plus, amplius* being used adverbially without any influence on the construction. We may thus say, *fossa plus quam pedes tres lata* or *fossa plus pedes tres lata* or *fossa plus pedibus tribus lata*.

milium passuum quindecim: *milium quindecim* is descriptive depending on *munitionem* and has *passuum* partitive genitive depending on it.

ad altitudinem valli: "up to the height," *i.e.* equalling the height of the Roman rampart.

falces: these were *falces murales* or "siege hooks," long poles with iron hooks for pulling down battlements and walls.

CHAPTER XLIII.

ferventes—glandes scil. *factas*: "red hot balls (made) of soft clay:" it is difficult to understand how these could be thrown by leathern slings. The *glans* was usually a leaden bullet, acorn-shaped at both ends, whence its name.

fervefacta iacula: perhaps tow and pitch was wrapped round them and then set on fire.

casas: instead of tents, the winter quarters were provided with huts, more permanent structures *(casae)*.

distulerunt, i.e., *(hae casae) distulerunt (ignem)*.

parta: "gained:" from *pario*: scil. *est*.

ea—fuit: "such the firmness of their resolution," "their firm resolve."

demigrandi causa: "for the purpose of retiring from the fight."

ne respiceret quidem: note the emphatic word put between *ne—quidem*. Of course the verb is governed by *ut*.

eventum: "result."

ut—constipaverant: "as they crowded themselves together beneath the very rampart, and those farthest off gave no chance to retreat to the foremost."

quodam loco, scil., *in*. The reference is to a movable tower *(turris mobilis)*.

quorum nemo = *sed nemo eorum*.

deturbati scil. *sunt*.

CHAPTER XLIV.

qui = *et tales ut*: "and so brave that they were nearly being advanced to the front rank." They were on the point of being *primipilares*.

perpetuas controversias: "long continued disputes." The plural refers to the various occasions.

quinam = *uter*: "which of the two:" for subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

omnibus annis for the more common *omnes annos*: "year in and year out."

summis simultatibus: "with the keenest rivalry about military position."

quam—pugnaretur: "when the fight was going on the keenest at the fortification."

quem—spectas: "what opportunity for proving your valour do you look for?"

in eam irrumpit: "against this (part) he directs his attack."

omnium opinionem: "the opinion that all would have of him."

relicto: between Pulio and the enemy.

quo—hunc: for the more common construction: *quem percussum et exanimatum* with *hunc* omitted as *quo* and *hunc* both refer to the wounded Gaul.

illum i.e. Pulio.

Pulioni: dative of disadvantage: F. 105, 9; P. 82 (c), i.

verutum: a light javelin shaped like a spit (*veru*).

hic casus: "this accident": the scabbard (*vagina*) was turned from its place and so placed out of Pulio's reach.

conanti: dative of disadvantage: "as he was trying to draw his sword."

succurrit: note the position of the verbs through this passage and the use of presents. Account for these two facts.

inimicus: distinguish this from *hostis*.

veruto: the dart that has pierced his shield and struck in the sword belt.

in locum—dejectus: "stumbling into a hollow place he fell."

rursus: "in his turn."

in contentione et certamine: "in their rivalry and in the fight."

utrumque servavit: "changed the positions of both."

inimicus: "though a foe."

CHAPTER XLV.

quanto correlative to *tanto*.

in dies implying daily increase or decrease and so used with comparatives: *quotidie*, daily repetition.

magna—vulneribus: "since a great number of the soldiers was exhausted with wounds."

res—pervenerat: "the garrison had been reduced to a few defenders."

intus: "in the camp." He was a knight, and probably as such brought his servants and followers with him: for as Caesar says, "there are only two classes among the Gauls, the Knights and the Druids, all the rest aer serfs and slaves": B. VI., chap. 13.

suamque—praestiterat: "and had sworn an oath of fidelity to him."

illigatas: the *in-* (*il-*) makes it probable that the dart was hollow and the letter was contained in it. —*ille* i.e. the slave.

ab eo cognoscitur = *Caesar ab eo cognoscit*.

CHAPTER XLVI.

millia: accusative of extent of space.

alterum noncium: "a second envoy."

reipublicae commodo: "with advantage to the state": *commodo*: ablative of attendant circumstance. Note in oblique narrative this would be *si—poteris, veni*.

CHAPTER XLVII.

adventu: "approach" rather than "arrival" which the word sometimes means. Caesar was already on the march from Samarobriva *(Amiens)* when Crassus reached them, and left orders for him to take charge of the troops and stores in that place.

litteras publicas: probably books and papers containing armory accounts. We might translate "state paperr."

non—moratus: "with tolerable haste."

occurit: scil., *Caesari*.

veritus ne—posset: explain the meaning of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of *fearing*. Translate *vereor ut veniat; vereor ne veniat.*

fugae similem: "which looked like a flight."

quos—sciret: the relative gives a reason and hence the subjunctive: "inasmuch as he knew that they were elated by the recent victory:" F. 198, 4; P. 99 (g), iii.

remittit: note that *re*-implies an answer to Caesar's message.

educturus esset: "(telling him in the letter) with what danger he would lead the legion from winter quarters." This is virtual oblique narrative. In direct narration it would be: *magno cum periculo—educam.*

rem gestam—perscribit: "he gives him a full account of the massacre (literally, the affair carried out) among the Eburones." Note the force of *per*-in *perscribit.* The reference is to the massacre of the fifteen cohorts of which Caesar could have heard no more than a rumour from Cicero's letter.

tria milia passuum: accusative of extent of space: F. 69; P. 83 (c).

CHAPTER XLVIII.

etsi—redierat: "though, disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions, he had been reduced to two:" literally, "he had returned to two." —*opinio* not "opinion" which is *sententia* in Latin, but "expectation."

unum—auxilium: "the only measure that could meet a danger which threatened all." The dative is governed by *auxilium* since *auxilior* the verb governs a dative.

magnis itineribus: ablative of means or instrument. The regular day's march *(iter justum)* was from six to seven hours long The start was usually made at sunrise, but this would depend on circumstances, for in special emergencies the army started at midnight or at two or three in the morning. The distance in the ordinary days march covered was 15 or 20 miles. In forced marches *(itinera magna)* the troops marched 8 to 12 hours and often covered 50 Roman miles.

Graecis—litteris: in Greek characters, not necessarily in the Greek language. All educated Romans understood Greek and some of the Gauls were familiar with the Greek alphabet. It is said that Caesar sometimes "used a somewhat simple cipher, each letter being the fourth from its true place in the alphabet."

tragulam: a heavy javelin, larger than the *verutum* mentioned above: derived from *traho.* It was hurled by means of the "thong" *(amentum*: from *agimentum,* from *ago,* "to drive," or from *apmentum* from *ap,* "to tie," as in *aptus).*

neque = et tamen non.

biduo: ablative of time within which: F. 82, 2; P. 85 (b).

perlectam, scil. *epistolam.* —*recitat*: this verb is often used in the sense "to read publicly." Translate: "he read the letter over and then recited it aloud in an assembly of soldiers": note the force of *per*-in *perlectam.*

CHAPTER XLIX.

per exploratores : distinguish this in meaning from *ab exploratoribus.*

omnibus copiis : ablative of attendant circumstances.

contendunt : "direct this march": *tendo* means, "to stretch" or "strain": the word is often used to express eagerness or haste.

hae, scil. *copiae*. Another reading is *haec*, agreeing with *milia*.

data facultate : "taking the opportunity," afforded him by the withdrawal of the Gauls.

Gallum—repetit : "asks for another Gaul": note the force of *re-* in *repetit*. Evidently the Gaul who had taken Cicero's first message had either not returned or was not disposed to make a second venture.

qui=ut is : F. 184, 1; P. 11, 25. Express purpose in different ways in Latin.

faciat, i.e., *ut faciat.*

convertisse : supply *hostes* from the preceding lines: *convertisse* is transitive.

eosque—confirmat : "and he strengthens them in their resolution to fight."

trans vallem et rivum : to be construed with *conspicatur*. The river is probably the Harne, a tributary of the Scheldt.

erat—res : "it was a very dangerous thing": literally, "a thing of great danger": the genitive is that of quality.

aequo animo—existimabat : "he thought that he might slacken his speed without alarm."

hominum milium septem : "consisting of" or "containing scarcely seven thousand men": genitive of description.

tamen—contrahit : "yet he contracts it as much as he can by making the streets between the tents narrow": literally, "by the narrowness of the streets." For the ways of a Roman camp see Introduction.

ut—veniat : literally, "that he should come to be an object of supreme contempt to our enemy."—*hostibus* : date of remoter object.

CHAPTER L.

ad aquam : at the stream flowing through the valley.

Galli scil. *continent.*

Caesar—contenderet : the order is: *Caesar (se continuit in suo loco) ut, si .... posset, citra vallem .... contenderet*: "Caesar kept himself in his own position so that, if haply, under the feigned appearance of fear he might be able to allure the enemy to his position, he might engage in battle with

them on his side of the valley in front of the camp."—*suum locum*: "a position favorable to himself," *i.e.*, on his side of the stream, on the sloping ground leading up to his camp: cp. *locus alienus*, "a ground picked by another," hence an unfavorable spot.

portas obstrui: "the gates to be blocked up," explained in the next chapter, by piling up rows of turfs.

concursari—agi: impersonal passives. Translate: "and in carrying out those orders he bids them run to and fro as much as possible and act with the greatest degree of feigned alarm:" literally, "that there should be rushing about and acting."

CHAPTER LI.

invitati: "tempted."

etiam de vallo: to give rise still more strongly to an appearance of alarm on the part of the Romans.

pronuntiari: "a proclamation to be made."

ante—tertiam: about 9 a.m.

sine periculo licere, scil. *id facere*.

in speciem = *ad speciem*: "for show."

ea scil. *via*: "by that way," or adverbial. The meaning is through the gates.

portis—facta: the soldiers, as they rushed out, easily threw down the thin barriers of turf.

omnino nemo: "no one at all." In what two ways is *nemo* made emphatic here?

pugnandi causa: "to make a fight of it."

armis: ablative of separation.

CHAPTER LII.

neque—relinqui: "and that there was no longer any chance of inflicting the slightest loss upon them." —*detrimento*: ablative of attendant circumstance.

producta: "being paraded."

non—vulnere: "that not one soldier in ten had escaped unwounded," literally, "not each tenth man." The superlative with *quisque* is a favorite Latin construction. Translate: *all the best men were praised by Caesar.*

sint administratae: dependent question: F., 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

appellat: "addresses."

de casu Sabini et Cottae: he had previously received an account of the disaster from Labienus, chapter 44, B. v., who had learned the circumstances from survivors, chap. 35, B. v.

hoc—relinquatur: "he tells them that the loss must be borne with the greater resignation on this account because, by the kindness of the immortal gods and by their valour since the loss has been wiped out, neither is lasting joy left to the enemy nor is more prolonged grief left to them." —*hoc*, ablative of means: *quod* expounds what it is. —*relinquatur*: subjunctive of *oblique* narration.

CHAPTER LIII.

per Remos: either, "through the country of the Remi," or "by means of the Remi."

abesset: scil., *Labienus*.

ante mediam noctem: the ninth hour would be about 2.30 p.m., for it was now autumn. To midnight from 2.30 p.m., would be less than ten hours. Messages were transmitted (B. VII., chap. 3) in the following way: "when anything unusually important and striking takes place, men pass the news over fields and districts by shouting, different persons in turn receive the message, and pass it on to their neighbors."

Fabium: he guarded the stores at Amiens (*Samarobriva*) in Caesar's absence.

tribus—legionibus: Caesar had now the legion of Cicero with him in addition to the other two mentioned, B. v., chap. 48.

trinis hibernis: distinguish *trina hiberna (castra)*: "three winter camps," and *tria hiberna castra*: "three winter huts": F., 69, 8, c.

et—explorabant: "and even trying to find out what resolution the rest of the Gauls were taking and by whom a beginning of the war was bei g carried on." —*quid—consilii*: partitive genitive. —*reliqui* scil. *Galli*. —*caperent—fieret*: dependent questions, hence the subjunctive.

quin—acciperet: literally, "but that he received." Translate, "without his receiving some news of the plans and disturbance of the Gauls."

Armoricae: now Britanny and Normandy. The word is said to be derived from *ar* "upon," and *moir*, "sea," both Keltic words: so that the name means "the country on the sea."

sui: Roscius.

longius milia passuum octo: see note on *minus horis tribus*: chap. 42.

adeo ut—videretur: "made their retreat *even* to its having the appearance of a flight": *adeo*, literally, "to that degree."

CHAPTER LIV.

alias—alias: "at one time—at another." Others make these agree with *civitates* understood.

quum—denuntiaret: "since he gave them to understand": —*quum*, causal: F. 188 3; P. 99 (g) ii.

in officio: "to its allegiance."

obtinuerant: "had held," not "obtained," which would be *adepti erant*.

adventu in Galliam Caesaris: "on the arrival of Caesar in Gaul." Note *in Galliam*.

senatum: a body consisting of the chief men of the tribe to whom Caesar applies the name of the corresponding body at Rome.

dicto audientes: "obedient": *audiens* is here used in the sense of *obediens*, which is a compound of *audiens. Dicto audire* is not found, though *dicto audiens* is common.

tantum—valuit: the subject of *valuit* is the following infinitive clause: translate: "(The fact) that some were found who were leaders in making war had such an influence with the barbarians, and it brought such a revulsion of feelings in the minds of all that there was hardly any state which was not suspected by our men except the Aedui and Remi. These Caesar always held in especial honour, one for their old and unwavering loyalty towards the Roman people, the other for their recent kindnesses in the Gallic war." —*vetus*, "long standing," not necessarily "unbroken": *perpetuus*, "unbroken."

nobis: dative of agent after the perfect participle passive for *a nobis*.

idque—dolebant: "and this (the fact last stated) is perhaps not so much to be wondered at, both for several other reasons and especially (from the fact) that they who in martial valour were accustomed to be ranked before all nations, especially grieved that they had lost so much of that reputation as to endure the command of the Roman people."—The indirect question after *haud scio an* is generally affirmative.—*opinionis*: partitive genitive.—*cum—tum*: "both . . . and."

CHAPTER LV.

totius hiemis—mitterent: "let no time of the whole winter pass without sending envoys across the Rhine": see note on *quin—acciperet*: chap. 53.

sollicitarent: "tampering with": from *sollus* = *totus* and *cieo*, "stir up."

neque—potuit: "still no state of the Germans could be persuaded":—*persuaderi* impersonal infinitive. Note that *potuit*, when used impersonally, can be joined only with the *passive* infinitive. "it is not possible to do this" is not *hoc facere potest* but *hoc fieri potest*.

Ariovisti bello: in the first campaign 58 B.C., mentioned in B. I., C. 30-54.

Tencterorum transitu: B. IV., chap. 1-15, in which is related the account of the *Tencteri* and the *Usipetes* crossing the Rhine, B.C. 55, and being driven back with great slaughter by Caesar.

lapsus: "disappointed."

tota Gallia: abl. of place *where*: F. L. 85, 3; P. 85, (k).

CHAPTER LVI.

intellexit scil. *Indutiomarus*.

ultro: "unsolicited."

venire: "that they were coming": impersonal infinitive with an intransitive verb.

conscientia facinoris: the Senones on account of the expulsion of their king Cavarinus (chap. 54): the Carnutes on account of the assassination of Tasgetius (chap. 25).

armatum concilium: so also Livy, xxi, 20: *in his nova terribilesque species visa est, quod armati* (*ita mos gentis*) *erat in concilium venerunt*. So the early Franks are said to have laid their arms aside only when going to church.

hoc=armatum concilium indicere.

quo adv. =*ad quod concilium*. —*vēnit*: not *vĕnit*.

novissimus: "last": so also *agmen novissimum*, "the rear guard." *dies novissimus*: "the end of the world": cp. the German *der jüngste Tag*.

hostem publicat: "he declares him a public enemy and all his property forfeited to the State." *publicare* is to make private property become public property.

huc=ad eas civitates: on the way to the Senones he would have to pass through the territory of the Remi.

CHAPTER LVII.

loci natura et manu=natura ac opere (Chap. 9): "by the natural position and art."

nihil timebat: "had no feeling of anxiety:" *nihil*, cog. acc.

quam=aliquam: note that *quis=aliquis* after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto.*

alias—alias: adverbs, "now—now:" as above Chap. 54.

timoris opinionem: "an impression of fear:" following the same tactics as Caesar had so successfully used of late.

CHAPTER LVIII.

in dies "daily," used with words expressing increase or diminution and hence used with comparatives or words of comparative force: *quotidie* "daily," expressing repetition.

nocte una: "during a single night:" the night of the day appointed for them to assemble, mentioned above.

intromissis: "admitted."

tanta diligentia: "with such care."

ubi visum est, scil., *eis discedere*: "when they thought it best for them to depart."

sub vesperum: "just before the evening set in:" note that *sub* with words of time may mean, "just before" or "just after."

praecipit atque interdicit: here we have a positive and a negative order. To *praecipit* belongs the clause *unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum* and to *interdicit* the clause *neu quis quem prius vulneret*, etc. Translate: he commands them that when the enemy should be terrified and put to flight (which he foresaw would happen, as it did), to all aim at Indutiomarus alone: and he forbids anyone wounding a man before he sees that chieftain slain."—*petant* i.e. *ut petant.*—*quem*: see note on *quam*, Chap. 57.

mora nactum: "having gained time by the delay caused by pursuing the rest."

occiderint, scil., *eum*: indefinite and, therefore, subjunctive: "any who should have killed him."

comprobat: "justifies."—*hominis*: Labienus.

fluminis: the Mosa (*Meuse*).

habuit: "found."

PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective ; f. = feminine ; m. = masculine ; N. = noun ; n. neuter ; pl. plural ; sing. = singular.

A.

Acc-o, -ōnis, N. m. : Acco, chief of the Senones.

Ădŭătŭc-ī, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : the *Aduatuci*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*. According to Caesar they were descended from the Cimbri and Teutones, who had been left behind to guard the baggage and cattle when these two nations made a descent on Italy (B. II., C. XXIX.). This is, however, contradicted when he says that the Belgae were the only Gallic tribe who kept the Cimbri and Teutones out of their territory. They lived near the confluence of the Sabis (*Sambre*) and the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Aedŭus, -a, -um. ; adj. : an *Aeduan*. The Aedui were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the *Allier*, the middle *Loire*, and the *Saône*, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was *Bibracte*. When Caesar came to Gaul, he found the *Aedui* had been overcome by their rivals the *Arverni* and the *Sequani*, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.

Afrĭcus, -i ; m : the *south-west* wind. Still called by the modern Italians *Africo.*

Agedincum, -i ; N. : capital of the Senones on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine: now called *Sens*.

Ambĭŏrix, -ĭgis ; m. : *Ambiorix*, chief of the Eburones.

Anartes, -ĭum ; m. : a Dacian tribe on the Theiss.

Ancalĭtes, -ĭum ; m. : a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar.

Antistius, -i ; m. : *Caius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Apoll -o, -ĭnis ; m. : Apollo, a god, son of Jupiter and Latona, identified by Caesar with a Gallic divinity.

Arduenn-a, -ae ; f. : the *Ardennes* forest of Gaul. According to Caesar, it reached from the Rhine and the territories of the Treveri to those of the Nervii, being upwards of fifty miles in length. The origin of the word is either from *ar denn*, i.e. "the profound," "the deep" (forest), or *ard* "hard", *venna* "pasture".

Ariovistus, -i ; N. m. : *Ariovistus*, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater part of the country and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is probably from the German *Heer*, "an army": *Fürst*, "a leader"; or from *Aar*, "an eagle"; *Vistus*, a Latinized form of *first=horst*, "a nest" the word would thus mean *Eyry*.

Arunculeius, -i; N. m.: *Lucius Arunculeius Cotta*, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones, was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinus from winter-quarters, Cotta was opposed to leaving the encampment but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, and both he and his colleague fell.

Armoric-us, a, -um; adj.: *Armorican*. The ancient Armorica comprised modern *Brittany* and part of *Normandy*. The word is derived from *ar*, "on" and *mor*, "sea".

Arpinēius, -i; N. m.: *Caius Arpineius*, a Roman knight.

Atrĕbas, -ātis; N. m.: *the Atrebatians* were a people of *Gallia Belgica*, of high renown for valour. Their territory lay S.E. from that of the Morini and S.W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Department du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetocenna (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*.)

Atrĭus, -i; N. m.: *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet while Caesar invaded Britain.

B.

Bacēnis, -is (scil. *silva*); adj.: a forest in Germany separating the Suebi from the Cherusci. It corresponded to the western portion of the *Thuringian Forest*, and formed part of the Hercynia Silva or *Black Forest*.

Bacŭlus, -i; N. m.: *Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Balventi-us, -i; N. m.: *Titus Balventius*, a brave Roman centurion: v. 25.

Băsĭl-us, -i; N. m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers; afterwards one of the conspirators against him.

Belgae, -ārum; N. m. pl.: *the Belgae*, a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Keltae in the time of Caesar by the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and the Sequana (*Seine*).

Belgĭum, -i; N. n.: the land of the *Belgae*, the modern *Belgium*.

Bellŏvăc-i, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the *Bellovaci*, a powerful nation of the Belgae, to the north of the Parisii. Their capital was Caesaromăgus, afterwards Bellovaci, now *Beauvais*.

Bibroci, tribe in S. E. Britain [*Bray?*]

Britannĭ-a, -ae; N. f.: the island of *Great Britain*

Britann-i, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the *Britons*.

Britannĭ-cus, -ca, -cum: adj.: *British*.

C.

Calĕt-i, -ōrum, also **Calet-es, -ĭum**; N. m. pl.: an Armorican tribe living in Normandy.

Cantĭ-um, -i; N. n.: *Kent*, a district in England. The name is said to be derived from the German *Kante*, "a corner."

Carnūt-es, -ĭum; N. pl. m.: a tribe in Central Gaul; their capital was Cenabum; now *Orleans*.

Carvili-us, -i; N. m.: a British king of Kent

Cass-i, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a small tribe of Britain who surrendered to Caesar.

Cassivellaunus, -i; N. m.: *Cassivellaunus*; Caswallon, commander-in-chief of the British army against Caesar.

Catuvolcus, -i; N. m.; *Catuvolcus*, a chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted

Cavarinus, -i; N. m.: a chief of the Senones.

Cavilius, -i; N. m.: a petty British chief.

Cenimagn-i, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a British tribe in Suffolk, who surrendered to Caesar.

Centrōnes, -um; N. pl.: (1) a Belgic tribe in the neighbourhood of Courtray, in West Flanders, subject to the Nervii; (2) a tribe in the Province.

Cherusc-i, -orum; N. m. pl.: a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Hartz mountains.

Cicĕr-o, -ōnis; N. m.: *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, the brother of the famous orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

Cingetŏr-ix, -ĭgis; N. m.; (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiomarus for the chief power among the Treveri: (2) a British chief in Kent.

Cisrhēnān-us -a, -um [cis, "on this side"; Rhenus, *Rhine*]; adj.; *lying on this* (i.e. the Italian) *side of the Rhine*, i.e. the western side.

Claudi-us, -i; N. m.: *Appius Claudius*, consul with L. Domitius, B.C. 54.

Commĭ-us, -i; N. m.: *Commius*, the leader of the Atrebates.

Condrūsī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Belgic tribe on the right bank of the Meuse, near Liège, district *Condroz*.

Corus, -i; N. m.: *Corus* or *Caurus*: the *north-west* wind.

Crassus, -i; N. m.: *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, who crushed the army of Spartacus B.C. 71. He was one of the first triumvirate along with Caesar and Pompey. He and his son Publius went to Parthia and perished there B.C. 53.

D.

Dacus, -i; N. m.: *a Dacian*. The Dacians occupied the south-east provinces of the modern Kingdom of Austria.

Dānūbĭus, -i; N. m: the Danube, the great river of Central Europe.

Dis, Dītis; N. m.: *Pluto*, god of the lower world.

Divitiăcus, -i; N. m.: (1) a Druid and chief of the Aedui who went to Rome to plead the cause of his countrymen when they were opposed by the Sequani and the Arverni in alliance with Ariovistus. He was faithful to Caesar, who rewarded him by pardoning his brother Dumnorix and the Bellovaci at his intercession. (2) A chief of the Suessiones, who held sway over a large part of Gaul and even Britain.

Domĭtĭus, -i; N. m.; *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul with Appius Claudius Pulcher, B.C. 54.

Druĭdes, -um; N. pl. m.; *the Druids* or priests of the ancient Britons and other Keltic tribes. The probable derivation is from the Keltic *der*, "an oak"; *wydd*, "mistletoe"; and *dyn*, "a man"; hence "the man who gains supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak."

Dumnŏrix, -ĭgis; N. m.: a chief of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He married the daughter of Orgetorix and obtained permission for the Helvetii to pass through the territory of the Sequani. He was always hostile to the Romans and was killed in B.C. 55 when trying to escape from Caesar.

Dūrocortŏrum, (Δουρικόρτορα) -ī; N. n.: capital of the Remi, now *Rheims*, situated on the Vèle, a branch of the Aisne.

E.

Eburōnes, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica to the S.W. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*) from the modern *Liège* to *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Their chief town was Aduatuca (B. II., C. IV.)

Eratosthĕnes, -is; N. m.: a Greek, born at Cyrene, in Africa B. C. 276: appointed librarian to the Alexandrian Library and died B.C. 192 of starvation, because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician and critic.

Essui, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul, supposed to have been the same with the Saii, and lying to the north of the Diablintes and Cenomani. Their chief city was Saii, now *Seez*, on the river Olina, now *Orne*.

F.

Fabius, -i; N. m.: *Caius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

G.

Gallĭa, -ae; N. f.: *Gaul*, now *France* and *Northern Italy*. *France* corresponded to *Gallĭa Transalpina*, or *Gallia Ulterior*, or "Gaul beyond the Alps," or "Further Gaul"; the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy comprised *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Gallia Citerior*; "Gaul this side the Alps" or "Hither Gaul."

Geidūni, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Geiduni* or *Gorduni* were a people of Belgic Gaul, on the sea coast, above the Morini.

Germāni, -ōrum; N, pl, m.; the *Germans*, a general name given by the Romans to the nations dwelling east of the Rhine. The word is probably from either (1) *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening w to g) and *mann*, "a man"; so that the word would mean "warriors," or (2) from the Keltic *gerr*, "war" and *mann*, "a man."

Germānĭa, -ae; N. f.: *Germany*.

Germānĭc-us, -a, -um; adj.: *German*.

Grūdii, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii, whose territory lay between the *Scaldis* (Scheldt) and the ocean. The name still survives in the modern *land van Groede* (district of Groede) above *l'Ecluse*, to the north.

H.

Harūdes, -um; N. pl. m.: a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head water of the river Danube. The district they occupied was in the vicinity of the present cities of *Rothwail* and *Fursternberg*. Others say they were from Jutland. They with 24,000 men crossed the Rhine to join the army of Ariovistus.

Helvētii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to the modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*); on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Helvētius, -a, -um; adj.: *Helvetian.*

Hercўnia scil. *Silva*: an extensive forest in Germany. According to Caesar, the breadth was a nine days' journey, while the length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Nemetes and Rauraci, along the Danube to the country of the Daci and Anartes. It included the present *Black Forest*, which separates Alsace and Suabia; the *Steyger* in Franconia; the *Spissard* and *Odenwald* on the borders of Hesse Darmstadt; the *Thuringer* in Thuringia; the *Bohemerwald* forming the boundary of Bohemia, and the *Hartz* forest in Lunenburg. The word is said to be from the German word *hartz*, "resin," and still remains in the present *Hartz*, or from *hart*, "high."

Hibernia, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Ireland*, for the derivation see note on B. v., C. 13.

Hispānia, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Spain.* The name is derived from a corrupt form of ἑσπερία, Hesperia, "the western land," from ἕσπερος, "the evening star"; *vesper*, "evening." From Hesperia comes by a corrupt form Hispania in Latin, the Spanish Espagña and our modern *Spain.*

Hispānus, -a, -um; adj.: *Spanish.*

I.

Indutiŏmărus, -i; N. m. sing.: a leading man among the Treveri, and rival o Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.

Illўricum, -i; N. m. sing.: *Illyricum* or *Illyria*, a country bordering on the Adriatic, opposite Italy.

Iūnius, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Iunius*, one of Caesar's officers, by birth a Spaniard.

Iuppĭter (gen. =*iŏvis*); N. m. sing.; *Juppiter*, son of Saturn, chief of the Roman gods.

Itălĭa, -āe; N. f. sing.: *Italy.*

Itĭus, -i; N. sing. m.: a harbour in Gaul, said to be modern *Boulogne.*

L.

Labērius, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

Labĭēnus, -i; N. m. sing.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar and went over to the side of Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

Levāci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Belgic Gaul, on the river Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and north-west of the Nervii, lying between them and the Grudii. Their territory in part forms the modern *Louvaine.*

Lingŏnes, -um; N. pl. m.: a people of Gaul whose people inhabited Mons Vosegus (*Vosges*), and consequently the sources of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and Matrŏna (*Marne*). They had a town also called Lingones (now *Longres*) and their territory corresponded to the modern Department of *Haute Marne.*

Lucānĭus, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Lucanius*, a brave centurion.

Lugotorix, -ĭgis; N. m. sing.: a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

Lutētia, -ae; N. f. sing.: the capital of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequana (*Seine*), now *Paris.* The city first began to be of importance under the first French kings and was extended to both banks of the river, the island being connected with them by bridges.

M.

Mandubratius, -ī; N. m. sing.: a chief of the Trinobantes in Britain, who attached himself to Caesar.

Mars, Martis; N. m. sing.: *Mars*, the Roman god of war.

Mĕldi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe on the Marne, east of the Parisii.

Mĕnăpii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of *Gallia Belgica* occupying both sides of the river Rhine. Their town was called *Menapiorum Castellum*, now, *Kessel*.

Mercūrius, -ī; N. m. sing.: *Mercury*, a Roman god, patron of traders and thieves; also the god of eloquence and the messenger of Jupiter. The name is from *merces*, "gain".

Mĭnerva, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom and arts (from *moneo*, "to advise," hence, "the adviser").

Minūcius, -i; N. sing. m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers, in the war against Ambiorix, and afterwards stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He sided with Caesar in the civil war, but afterwards became one of Caesar's assassins. The year after Caesar's death, 43 B.C., he was killed by his own slaves

Mŏna, -ae; N. f. sing.: the island of *Anglesey*. See note v., 13.

Moritasgus, -ī; N. m. sing.: chief of the Senones, a brother of Cavarinus.

Mŏsa, -ae; N. f. sing.: the *Meuse*, or *Maas*, a river of Gaul rising among the Lingones, a little west of Mt. Vosegus and falling into the Vahalis (now *Waal*).

Mūnātius, -i; N. sing. m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of three legions which wintered in Belgium.

N.

Nemētes, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Nemetes*, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine, occupying part of *Baden*. Their chief town was Noviomagus (now *Spires*).

Nervii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Nervii*, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was N.E. of that of the Atrebates. The river Scaldis (*Scheldt*) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was Bagocum (now *Bavay*) which was afterwards supplanted by Cameracum (now *Cambray*), and Turnacum (now *Tournay*).

P.

Pādus, -ī; N. m. sing.: the *Po*, the largest river of Italy. It rises in Mons Vesulus (*Mt. Viso*), near the sources of the Druentia (now *Drance*), runs in an easterly direction for more than 500 miles and discharges its waters into the Adriatic about 30 miles south of Portus Venetus (the modern *Venice*).

Parisii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Parisii*, a Gallic tribe, north of the Carnutes and Senones. Their chief city was *Lutetia*, afterwards *Parisii*, now *Paris*.

Petrosidius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard bearer of Caesar's army.

Pirustae, -ārum; N. pl. m.: a tribe in Illyricum.

Plancus, -ī; N. Sing. m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe N.E. of the Atrebates, dependents o the Nervii, in West Flanders, west of the Suessiones.

Pompēius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Cn. Pompey*: *Pompey, the Great*; see History.

Provincia, -ae; N. f. sing.: the Roman *Province* of Southern Gaul. Now *Provènce.*

Pulio, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: a centurion, rival of *Vorenus*.

R.

Rauraci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Rauraxorum, now *Augst*, a small village near *Basle*.

Rēmi, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a powerful Gallic tribe whose capital was Durocortorum, now *Rheims*.

Rhēnus, -i; N. sing. m.: the *Rhine*, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above *Mt. St. Gothard*, in the country of the *Grisons* It passes through Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*), afterwards through Lake Acronius (*Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Basle*). At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams till it enters the North Sea. The word is from the Aryan root SRU, "to flow."

Rōmānus, -a, -um: adj.: *Roman*.

Roscius, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the Esubii.

S.

Samarobrīva, -ae; N. f. sing.: a town of the Ambiani on the Samara (*Somme*); later called Ambiani, now *Amiens*.

Scaldis, -is; N. m. sing.: now the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, rising about 15 miles south of Camaracum, now *Cambray*, and falling into the German Sea near the modern island of *Walcheren*.

Sedūnī, ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Helvetia, to the south-east of Lacus Lemannus, and occupying the head waters of the Rhine. Their chief town was Sedunum, now *Sion* or *Sillen*.

Segontiăci, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Britain, living probably in the modern Hampshire.

Segŏnax, -ăcis: N. sing. m.: one of the four rulers of Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion.

Senŏnes, -um; N. pl. m.: a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, to the north-west of the Aedui. At the time of Caesar they had been reduced to mere clients of the Aedui. Their chief town was Agedincum, afterwards Senones; now *Sens*.

Sēquănī, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus, the German, to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of Ariovistus, they felt severely the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (*Besançon*).

Sextius, -i; N. sing. m.: (1) *Titus Sextius*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army. (2) *P. Sextius Baculus*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

Silānus, -i: N. sing. m.: *Marcus Silanus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Suēbi, -ōrum: N. pl. m.: the *Suabians*, a German people who settled in the regions now known as *Bavaria* and *Würtemberg*.

Sugambri, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a German nation, in Caesar's time dwelling near the Rhine, but whose earlier settlements appear to have been further inland.

T.

Tămĕsis, -is ; N. m. sing. : the *Thames.*

Tasgĕtĭus, -i ; N. m. sing. : the chief of the Carnutes whom Caesar restored to supreme power.

Taxĭmăgŭlus, -i ; N. m. sing. : a British prince, one of the four kings of Kent.

Tectosăges, -um ; N. m. pl. : a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the province. Their capital was Tolōsa (now *Toulouse*).

Tenctĕrī, orum ; N. pl. m. : a German tribe who, being hard pressed by the Suebi, settled with the Usipetes in the lower Rhine.

Titurius, -i ; N. m. sing. : *Q. Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, who lost his life in an ambuscade contrived by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones.

Transrhēnānus, -a, -um ; adj. : *beyond* or *on the other side of the Rhine.*

Trebōnĭus, -i ; N. m. sing. : *Caius Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

Trēvĕrī, (also Trevĭri) -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : the *Treveri*, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, north-east of the Rhine, between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*). Their chief town was Augusta Trevirorum, now *Treves.*

U.

Ubĭī, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : a German nation on the right bank of the Rhine. During the reign of Augustus, they were removed by Agrippa to the opposite or left bank in Gaul. At a subsequent period Agrippīna, the mother of Nero, established a colony of veterans in their territory, called from her Colonia Agrippīna, now *Cologne.*

Usipĕtes, -um ; N. pl. m. : a German nation, originally in Saxony.

V.

Vertĭco, -ōnis ; N. sing. m. : a Nervian nobleman friendly to the Romans.

Vorēnus, -i ; N. sing. m. : a Roman centurion, rival of Pulio.

Volcātĭus, -i ; N. sing. m. : Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers, left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, while Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	active.
abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative
adv.	adverb.
card.	cardinal.
cf.	confer, *i.e.*, compare.
comm.	common gender.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
demonstr.	demonstrative.
dep.	deponent.
dim.	diminutive.
distrib.	distributive.
e. g.	exempli gratiâ (for instance).
=	meaning the same as.
f.	feminine gender.
freq.	frequentative.
impers.	impersonal, -ly.
incep.	inceptive.
indecl.	indeclinable.
interrog.	interrogative.
irreg.	irregular.
m.	masculine gender.
n.	neuter, neuter gender
num.	numeral.
opp.	opposed to in meaning
ord.	ordinal.
p.	page.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
pl., or plur.	plural.
prep.	preposition.
pron.	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
sc.	scilicet (one must understand).
sq.	sequens (and the following).
sing.	singular.
subst.	substantive.
sup.	superlative.
usu.	usually.
v.	verb.
v. or V.	vide (look at).

VOCABULARY.

A.

a. d. = ante diem, a phrase used in reckoning the days of the month.

a, ab, abs, prep. w. abl., *by, from, at, etc.*; **a dextro cornu,** *on the right wing*: **a tergo,** *in the rear*; sometimes a, ab, is used as an adv.: **ab millibus passuum octo** = eight miles *off*.

ab-do, ĕre, abdĭdi, abdĭtum, *to hide.*

ab-dūco, ducĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead away.*

ab-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go away.*

ab-futurus, fut. part. of **ab-sum.**

ăbĭcĭo (abj.) ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to cast* or *throw away, throw down.*

ăbiēs, ĕtis, f., *fir.*

ab-iungo (abjungo), ĕre, nxi, nctum, *to separate, detach, disjoin.*

ab-rĭpio, ĕre, ripui, reptum, *to tear away; carry off by force.* [rapio.]

abs-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *cut off, cut away.* [caedo.]

absens, -tis, pres. part. of absum, *absent.*

absimiiis, e, adj., *unlike.*

ab-sisto, ĕre, abstĭti, *to desist, stand aloof from.*

abs-tineo, ēre, tinui, tentum *hold back; abstain from; spare.* [teneo.]

abs-trăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *drag away; take away by force.*

absum, abesse, abfŭi, fut. inf., abfore or abfuturus esse, *to be away from, be absent, be distant.*

abundo, are, avi, atum, *overflow; abound in; be well supplied with.* [unda, a wave.]

ac (=atque), conj., *and, and moreover.*

accēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come* or *go near, to approach; to be added.*

accelero, are, avi, atum, *make haste; quicken; hurry.*

accerso (=arcesso), ĕre, īvi, ītum, *to send for, summon.* [ad-cēdo.]

accĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, no sup., *to happen; turn out; fall to the lot of,* [ad-cado.]

accīdo, ĕre cīdi, cīsum, *to cut into.* [ad-caedo.]

accĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive; to learn.* [ad-capio.]

acclīvis, e, adj., *sloping upwards; ascending.* [clivus.]

acclīvitās tātis, *an upward slope; an ascent.*

accommŏdātus, a, um, pf. pass. part. of accommodo, *suited, adapted.*

accommŏdo, are, avi, atum, *fit, adapt, adjust.*

accūrāte, adv., comp. -tius, *carefully, exactly.*

ac-curro, ĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run to, hasten to.*

ac-cuso, are, avi, atum, *accuse, blame reproach.* [ad, causa.]

ācer, ācris, ācrĕ, adj., *sharp, keen, energetic, violent.*

ăcerbē, adv., *sharply, bitterly, harshly.*

ăcerbitās, tātis, *sharpness, bitterness, sorrow, trouble, hardship.*

ăcerbus, a, um, *harsh, bitter, cruel, severe, disagreeable.*

ācerrĭme. *V.* acriter.

ăcervus, i, m, *a heap, pile.*

ăcies, ēi, f., *a sharp point or edge*; *keenness* or *fierceness* of the eye; *line of battle, battle array*. [root AC sharp; "a thin line."]

acquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *to gain, obtain, procure*.

ācrĭter, adv., *fiercely, sharply*, comp. acrius: sup. acerrime. [acer.]

actuārĭus, a, um, adj,, *impelled by oars*. [ago.]

actus, pf. part. of *ago*.

acuo, acuĕre, -ui, ūtum, *sharpen*.

acūtus, a, um, pf. part. of acuo, as adj., *sharp, pointed*.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, up to*; *by, near to*.

ădactus. *V.* adigo.

ăd-aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make equal to*; *to equal, rival*.

ad-ămo, āre, āvi, ātum, *conceive an affection for, love, covet*.

ad-augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *to increase*.

ad-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to add*.

ad-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead to, bring to, induce*.

ădemptus. *V.* adimo.

ăd-ĕo, īre, ii, ĭtum, *to go to, approach*.

ădĕo, adv., *to this degree, thus, thus far, so*.

adeptus, pf. part. of **adipiscor**.

adĕquito, are, avi, atum, *ride up to*; *ride towards*. [eques.]

adfectus. *V.* adficio.

adfero. *V.* affero.

ad-ficio. *V.* afficio.

adflictus. *V.* adfligo.

ad-flīgo, flīgĕre, flixi, flictum, *to cast* or *throw down*.

ad-grĕgo, are, avi, atum, *to add to a flock*; adgregare se, *to attach oneself*. [ad, grex, grego.]

ad-haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, *to stick to*.

ad-haeresco, ĕre, haesi, haesum, *stick to; adhere to*.

ad-hĭbeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *bring in, call in, invite, to have* (one up) *to, to summon, employ, consult*. [ad, habeo.]

ad-hortor, ari, atus, *to encourage, urge on*.

adhuc, adv., *as yet*; *hitherto*; *still*; *up to this time*.

ad-iăceo, ēre, iacui, no sup., *to lie near to*; with dat.

adicio (adjicio), ĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw to, throw upon, add*. [iacio.]

ad-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring* or *drive to*; *drive home*. [ad, ago.]

ăd-ĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *to take away, deprive of*. [ad, emo.]

ad-ĭpiscor, i, eptus, *to gain, obtain*.

adĭtus, ūs, m., *a going to, access, approach*. [ad, eo.]

adiūdico, are, avi, atum, *adjudge, award, assign*.

ad-iungo, ĕre, nxi, nctum, *to join to*.

ad-iūtor, ōris, m., *a helper*.

ad-iŭvo, are, iūvi, iūtum, *to aid*.

admātūro, are, avi, atum, *ripen, mature*; *hasten*.

ad-mĭnister, tri, m., *an attendant, agent*.

ad-mĭnistro, are, avi, atum, *to manage*.

admirandus, a, um, gerundive of admiror, *wonderful*.

ad-mīror, ari, atus, *to wonder at, to admire*.

ad-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to admit*; *commit*.

ad-mŏdum, adv., *up to the limit, much, very*.

ad-mŏneo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to advise, warn*.

adŏlescens, entis, part. of adolesco: as adj., *young*; as subst., comm., *a young man, youth.*

adolesco, ĕre, olēvi, ultum, *grow up; reach adult age.*

ăd-ŏrior, iri, ortus, 4 (but with some 3rd conj. forms) *to attack.*

adpĕto (app.), ĕre, īvi, or ĭi, ītum, *to draw near, approach.*

ad-plĭco (app.), āre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to put against.*

ad-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey.*

ad-prŏpinquo (app.), āre, āvi, ātum, *to come* or *draw near to.*

adscendo. *V.* ascendo.

ad-scisco, ĕre, scīvi, scītum, *approve; admit, receive, adopt.*

ad-sĭdŭus, (ass.) a, um, adj., *continual, constant.* [adsideo.]

ad-sisto, (ass.) ĕre, astĭti, no sup., *to stand by.*

ad-sŭēfăcĭo, (ass.) ĕre, fēci, factum, *to accustom, to habituate*; in pass., *to get used* (to anything).

ad-sŭesco, (ass.) ĕre, ēvi, ētum, *to grow used to, get accustomed to.*

adsum, -esse, -fui, *to be present, be at hand.*

ad-tingo, (att.) ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, *to touch, border upon.*

ad-tribuo. See attribuo.

adulescens. v. adolescens.

adulescentia (or adolescentia), ae, f, *youth; age of youth.*

adulescentulus, i, m, dimin., *a lad, stripling.*

adventus, ūs, m., *a coming, approach.*

adversarius, i, m, *an adversary, opponent; foe.*

adversus, a, um, adj., *turned towards, facing.*

adversus, prep. w. acc., *opposite to, against.*

adverto, ĕre, verti, versum, *turn to*; **animum advertere**, *direct the mind to, observe, notice, perceive.*

advŏco, are, avi, atum, *call to, summon.*

ad-vŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fly to; to hasten off to.*

aedĭfĭcium, i, n., *a building.* [aedes, facio.]

aedĭfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make a building, to build.* [aedes, facio.]

aeger, gra, grum, adj., *ill, sick.*

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty.*

aequāliter, adv., *evenly, regularly, uniformly.*

aequĭnoctĭum, i, n, *the equinox.* [aequus, nox.]

aequĭtās, ātis, f., *equality, justice, evenness*; animi aequitas, *contentment.*

aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make equal.*

aequus, a, um, adj., *equal, level, advantageous.*

aeraria, ae, *a copper mine.* [aes.]

aerarius, a, um, *belonging to, pertaining to copper or bronze.*

aereus, a, um, *made of copper or bronze.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze; money.* **aes alienum**, *debt* (other people's money).

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.*

aestĭmātĭo, ōnis, f., *a valuation.*

aestĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to estimate. reckon.*

aestīvus, a, um, adj., *pertaining to summer; of summer.*

aestuārium, i, n, *a marshy arm of the sea.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat; tide; current.*

aetās, ātis, f., *age, time of life.*

aeternus, a, um, adj., *eternal, unbroken, perpetual.*

Afrĭcus ventus, *the south-west wind.*

affĕro (adf.), afferre, attŭli, allātum or allatum, *to bring forward, allege.*

affĭcĭo (adf.), ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to affect, influence* ; *to visit with, treat.*

affīgo (adf.), ĕre, fixi, fixum, *fix on* ; *attach to.*

affingo (adf.), ĕre, finxi, fictum, *invent, add falsely.*

affīnitās (adf.), ātis, f., *relationship* by marriage ; *kinship.*

affirmatio (adf.), -ōnis, f., *declaration ; assurance, assertion.*

affixus, pf., part. of **affigo.**

afflictus, v. **affligo.**

affligo, v. **adfligo.**

ăger, gri, m., *land, territory, domain.*

agger, ĕris, m., *pile, mound, rampart, mole, dike* ; *materials for a mound.*

aggredior (adg.), i, gressus sum, *go to* ; *attack.*

aggrego, v. **adgrego.**

ăgĭto, are, avi, atum, *drive, trouble, vex* ; *propose, consider, discuss.*

agmen, ĭnis, n., *an army on the march, a column* ; *a train.*

ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to do, act, drive, push forward* ; *to treat* (with any one ; cf. Eng., *drive a bargain*).

agrĭcultūra, ae, f., *farming, husbandry.* [aeger, colo.]

ălăcer, cris, cre, adj., *brisk, eager.*

alacritās, ātis, *eagerness, ardor, zeal.*

ālārius, a, um, adj., *on the wings, belonging to the wings of an army* ; hence alarii = *the allies*, who were placed on the wings.

albus, a, um, adj., *white.*

alces, is, f., *the elk.*

ălĭās, adv., *at another time* : alias.. alias..*at one time..at another time.*

aliēnatus, p. part. of alieno.

aliēno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to derange, deprive of reason.*

ălĭēnus, a um, adj., *that belongs to another, foreign* ; **aes alienum**, *debt.*

ălĭō, adv., *elsewhere, to another place.* [alius.]

ălĭquamdiu, adv., *for a considerable time.*

aliquando, adv., *at some time, at length* ; *some time.*

aliquanto, adv. of degree, *somewhat, considerably, rather.*

ălĭquantum, adj. used as subs., *a certain amount.*

ălĭqui, ălĭqua, ălĭquod, indef. adj., *some, any.*

ălĭquis, ălĭqua, ălĭquid, indef. pron., subst., and adj., *some one, something.*

aliquot, indecl. indef. adj., *some, several.*

ălĭter, adv., *otherwise, in a different way* ; **aliter ac**, *differently from what, otherwise than.* [alius.]

ălĭus, ia, iud (gen. alīus, dative, alii), *other, another* ; *alius..alius, one.. another* ; *alii..alii, some..others.*

allatus, v. **affero.**

allĭcĭo (adl.), ĕre, lexi, lectum, *to draw to, to attract.*

ălo, ĕre, ălŭi, altum and ălĭtum, *to feed, nourish, foster, promote.*

alter, ĕra, ĕrum (gen. alterĭus, dat. alteri), adj., *the other of two, one of two, the other* ; in plur., alteri..alteri, *the one party..the other party.*

alternus, a, um, adj., *alternate, one after another, mutual.* [alter.]

altĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *height* or *depth.*

altum, i, n., *the deep*, the *deep sea.* [altus.]

altus, a, um, adj., *high, deep.*

alūta, ae, f., *tanned skin, soft leather.*

ambactus, i, m., *a retainer, vassal.*

ambo, ambae, bo, adj., *both.*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.* [a, mens.]

āmentum, i. n., *a strap* or *thong*.

amfractus, ūs, m., *a winding path*. [amb, frango.]

ămīcē, adv., *kindly, in a friendly manner*.

ămīcĭtĭa, ae, f., *friendship*.

ămīcus, a, um, adj., *friendly*.

āmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to lose*.

ămŏr, ōris, m., *love, affection*.

amplē, adv., *largely, liberally, abundantly*.

amplĭfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to widen, extend, enlarge*.

amplior, comp., adj., from amplus, *large, full*.

amplĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *width, size*.

amplĭus, comp. adv., *more, further*. [amplus.]

amplus, a, um, adj., *great, large*.

an, conj. introducing second half of a disjunctive or double question, *or*; an.. an, *whether..or*.

anceps, cipitis, adj., *two headed; double, two-fold; doubtful*.

ancŏra, ae, f., *an anchor*.

angŭlus, i, m., *a corner, angle, extreme point*.

angustĭae, ārum, f., *narrowness*.

angustĭus, comp. adv., *within more narrow limits*; *more scantily*.

angustus, a, um, adj., *narrow, contracted*.

ănĭma, ae, f., *the soul, life, breath*.

ănĭmadverto, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn the mind to, give heed to, notice, observe*. [animus, ad, verto.]

ănĭmăl, ālis, n., *an animal*.

ănĭmus, i, m., *mind, courage, resolution, thought*.

annōtĭnus, a, um, adj., *a year old, of last year, last year's*. [annus.]

annus, i, m., *a year*.

annuus, a, um, adj., *annual, yearly*.

anser, ĕris, m., *a goose*.

ante, prep. w. acc. and adv., *before*.

anteā, adv., *before*.

antĕ-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go before, go ahead, take the lead*.

antĕ-cursor, ōris, m., *a forerunner*; in plur., of an army, *advanced guard, scouts*.

antĕ-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to prefer*.

antemna or **antenna**, ae, f., *a sail-yard*.

antepōno, ĕre, posui, posĭtum, *place before; prefer*.

antequam, conj., *before*; *before that*.

anteverto, ĕre, verti, versum, *place before; prefer*.

antīquĭtus, adv., *anciently, in former times, of old*. [antiquus.]

antīquus, a, um, adj., *old, ancient*.

ăpĕrĭo, īre, ĕrŭi, ertum, *to open, unclose*.

ăpertē, adv., *openly, manifestly*. [apertus.]

ăpertus, a, um, perf. part. of aperio: as adj., *open, unprotected*.

appăro, are, avi, atum, *provide, prepare, equip*.

appello, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call upon, call upon by name, to call*.

appello, ĕre, appŭli, appulsum, (of ships) *to bring to port*.

appeto, (adp.) ere, petivi, or ii, petītum, *aim at, desire, seek*; *approach*.

applico, are, plicui, plicatum or plicitum, *attach*; *lean against*.

apprŏbo, (adp.) are, avi, atum, *approve of, assent to, favor*.

appropinquo v. **ad-propinquo**.

appulsus v. **appello**, ĕre.

aptus, a, um, adj., *fit, suitable*.

ăpŭd, prep. w. acc., *at, in, among, with, near, at the house of*.

ăqua, ae, f., *water*.

ăquātio, ōnis, f., *getting water.*

ăquĭla, ae. f., *an eagle. The eagle, the principal standard of a Roman legion*, carried on the top of a staff, originally of silver, later of gold.

ăquĭlĭfer, ĕri, m., *eagle bearer, the officer who carried the chief standard of a Roman legion.* ("The eagle-bearer was *aquilifer*, chosen by the centurions among the hardiest and bravest soldiers, and distinguished by a bearskin which covered his helmet and shoulders." Bond and Walpole.)

arbĭter, tri, m., *a witness, judge, umpire.*

arbĭtrĭum, ĭi, n., *a decision, judgment.* [arbiter, *an umpire.*]

arbĭtror, āri, ātus, *to judge, think, consider.* [arbiter.]

arbor, ŏris, f., *a tree.*

arcesso, ĕre, cessīvi, cessītum, *send for, summon, fetch.*

ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, *to be on fire, to burn*: **Gallia ardet**, *is aflame, burning with wrath.*

arduus, a, um, adj., *steep, high, difficult.*

argentum, i, n., *silver.*

argilla, ae, f., *clay.*

aridus, a, um, adj., *dry.* **aridum**, subst., *dry land, the shore.*

ariēs, arĭetis, m., *battering ram*; also *a prop, buttress, support.*

arma, ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons of war.*

armāmenta, orum, n. pl., *implements, fittings, tackle, rigging.*

armātura, ae, f., *armor, equipment.* levis armaturae, *light-armed* (soldiers).

armātus, a, um, part. armo: as adj., *armed, wearing arms.*

armo, are, avi, atum, *to furnish with weapons, arm, equip.*

arrĭpĭo, ĕre, rĭpŭi, reptum, *to seize, snatch up.* [ad, rapio.]

arroganter, adv., *insolently, arrogantly, haughtily.*

arrogantia, ae, f., *insolence, arrogance, haughtiness.*

ars, tis, f., *art, handicraft, skill.*

artē, adv., *closely, tightly.* [artus.]

artĭcŭlus, i, m., dim. of artus, *a joint* of an animal body.

artĭfĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *skilled labour, handicraft, a trade.*

artus, a, um, adj., *close, tight fitting.* [arceo, shut up.]

arx, arcis, f., *fortress, stronghold, citadel.*

ascendo, (ads.), ĕre, scendi, scensum, *to climb, mount up, ascend.* [ad, scando.]

ascensus, (ads.) ūs, m., *a going up, look, ascent.*

aspectus, (ads.) ūs, m., *appearance, sight.*

asper, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *rough*: oppugnatio, *fierce, severe.*

assiduus, v. **adsiduus.**

assisto, v. **adsisto.**

assuefacio, v. **adsuefacio.**

assuesco, v. **adsuesco**,

at, conj., *but, yet.*

atque (ac) conj., *and, and also*; with words meaning difference, *than.*

attexo, ĕre, texui, textum, *weave to*; *add, join.*

attingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, *to reach, touch.*

attrĭbŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to add to, assign, give.*

auctŏr, ōris, m., *an adviser, instigator.*

auctōrĭtās, ātis, f., *influence;* seldom translated *authority.*

auctus, a, um, pf. part. of augeo, *increased*; as adj., *distinguished.*

audācĭa, ae, f., *boldness, daring.*

audācter, adv., *boldly*; audacius, audacissime. [audax.]

audax, ācis, adj., *bold, spirited, fearless; audacious.*

audĕo, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *to dare.*

audiens, -ntis, pres. part. of audio; as adj., *obedient to.*

audĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to hear, to hearken unto, obey.*

audītio, ōnis, f., *report, rumor, hearsay.*

augĕo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *to enlarge, increase.*

aurīga, ae, m., *chariot driver, charioteer.*

auris, is, f., *an ear.*

aut, conj., *or*: aut..aut, *either..or.*

autem, conj., introducing a thought, *either* entirely opposed to the previous train of thought *or* simply different; (1) *but*, (2) *moreover, now* (transitional).

autumnus, i, m., *autumn.* [augeo.]

auxiliaris, e, adj., *auxiliary.*

auxilior, ari, atus sum, *assist, help.*

auxĭlĭum, ĭi, n., *aid, help.*

avāritia, ae, f., *greed, avarice, covetousness.*

āvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *carry away.*

āversus, a, um, part of averto, *turned away; behind, in the rear.*

āverto, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn* (anything) *away.*

ăvis, is, f., *a bird.*

ăvus, i, m., *a grandfather.*

B.

baltĕus, i. m., *a sword-belt.*

barbărus, i. m., *a foreigner, barbarian.* [βάρβαρος.]

bellicōsus, a, um, adj., *warlike.*

bellĭcus, a, um, adj., *used for war, warlike.*

bello, are, avi, atum, *wage war.*

bellum, i, n., *war.*

bĕnĕ, adv., *well.*

bĕnĕ-fĭcium, *a kindness, favor.* [bene-facio.]

bĕnĕ-vŏlentĭa, ae, f., *good will, friendship, kindness.* [bene, volo.]

bĭdŭum, i. n., *a space of two days.* [bis, dies.]

bĭennium, i, n, *a space of two years.* [bis, annus.]

bīni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *two at a time, two each, in groups of two.*

bĭpedālis, e, adj., *two feet long, wide, thick, etc.*

bĭpertīto, adv., *in two divisions.*

bĭs, num. adv., *twice.*

bŏnitās, ātis, f., *goodness, excellence.*

bŏnus, a, um, adj., *good*; as subst., **bona**, orum, n. plur., *wealth, goods, property.*

bŏnum, i. n., *profit, good, advantage.*

bōs, bŏvis, comm., *an ox, a cow.*

brachium, i, n., *an arm.*

brĕvis, e, adj., *short, brief.*

brĕvitās, ātis, f., *shortness, smallness, smallness of stature.*

brĕviter, adv., *briefly, shortly.*

brūma, ae, f., *winter; the winter solstice.* [brevis.]

C.

C. = Caius.

cacūmen, ĭnis, n., *a point, peak, summit.*

cadāver, eris, n., *a corpse, dead body.*

cădo, ĕre, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, *to fall; to fall* (i.e. *be killed*) *in battle.*

caedes, is, f., *a cutting down, slaughter.* [caedo.]

caelestis, e, adj., *belonging to the sky, heavenly*: as subst., *a deity.*

caerimonia, ae, f., *a religious ceremony or rite.*

caerŭlĕus, a, um, adj., *blue.*

călămĭtās, ātis, f., *mishap, disaster.*

callidus, a, um, adj., *crafty, cunning, expert, skilful.*

cālō, ōnis, m., *camp-follower.*

campester, tris, tre, adj., *on level ground, flat, level.*

campus, i, m., *a plain.*

căno, canĕre, cĕcĭni, cantum, *sing, sound a musical instrument.*

căper, pri, m., *a he-goat, goat.*

căpillus, i, m., *hair, lock of hair.*

căpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, captum, *to take, make* (in the nautical sense of *reach*).

caprĕa, ae, f., *a wild she-goat.*

captīvus, a, um, adj., *taken prisoner*: as subst., **captīvus**, i, m., *a prisoner of war, captive.* [capio.]

captus, p. part. of capio; capta, orum, n, pl. subst., *plunder.*

captus, ūs, m., *capacity, comprehension, notion, idea.* [capio.]

căpŭt, ĭtis, n., *the head.*

cărĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to be without*; govs. abl.

carīna, ae, f., *the keel* of a ship.

căro, carnis, f., *flesh.*

carpo, ĕre, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*; *censure, criticise, slander, revile.*

carrus, ūs, m., *a cart, waggon.*

cārus, a, um, adj., *dear, valued.*

căsa, ae, f., *a hut.*

cāsĕus, i. m., *cheese.*

cassis, idis, f., *a helmet.*

castellum, i, n., *a fort, redoubt.* [dimin. of castrum.]

castigo, are, avi, atum, *punish, reprove, censure.*

castrum, i. n., *a fort*; more usual in plur., **castra**, ōrum, n., *a camp.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *accident, chance, event.* [cado.]

cătēna, ae, f., *a chain.*

causa, ae, f., *a reason*, **causā**, abl. sing. with gen., *for the sake of, on account of.*

cautē. adv., *cautiously.* [caveo.]

cautēs, is, f., *a jagged rock, crag, cliff.*

cautus, pf. part. pass. of caveo.

căveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *to take care; be on one's guard.*

cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum (of troops), *to retire, fall back.*

cēlĕrĭtās, ātis, f., *quickness, speed, swiftness.* [cĕler.]

celeriter, adv., *quickly.*

cēlo, are, avi, atum, *conceal, keep in the dark, hide.*

censĕo, ēre, censŭi, censum, *to be of opinion, to think.*

census, ūs, m., *a census, count.* [censeo.]

centēni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *a hundred each.*

centum, *a hundred.*

centŭrĭo, ōnis, m., *a captain of a hundred men, a centurion.*

cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *to distinguish by the senses, to see, perceive.*

certāmen, ĭnis, n., *a contest, rivalry.*

cērtē, adv., *certainly, surely*: **certius** (cognoscere) *more exactly, more in detail.*

certus, a, um, adj., *assured, fixed, settled*: (aliquem) **certiorem facere**, *to inform, let anyone know*; in pass., **certior fieri**, *to be informed.*

cervus, i, m., *a stag, deer.*

cespĕs, ĭtis, m., *a cut sod* or *turf.*

cētĕrus, a, um, adj., *the rest*; usually in plur., *the rest, the others.*

cibāria, ōrum, n. plur., *provisions.*

cĭbus, i, m., *food.*

cingo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to surround, encompass.*

cippus, i, m., *a stake, post, palisade.*

circā, adv., *round about, around.*

circĭnus, i, m., *a pair of compasses.*

circĭter, prep. gov. acc. and adv., *about*; mostly of numbers or time.

circueo, v., **circumeo.**

circuitus, part. *V.* circumeo.

circŭĭtus, ūs, m., *a going round, compass.* [circum, eo].

circum, prep. w. acc. and adv., *around, about.*

circum-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *to cut around, cut.*

circumcīsus, a, um, pf. part. of **circumcido**, *cut off, inaccessible, steep.*

circum-clūdo, ĕre, si, sum, *to shut in all around, to surround.*

circum-do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *to surround, inclose*; *place round.*

circŭm-ĕo, īre, ii, and īvi, circuĭtum, *to go round, visit.*

circum-fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum, *to pour around*; with se, *to crowd around, gather around.*

circumicio, icĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw around, place around.*

circumiectus, pl. part. of **circum icio**, *surrounding.*

circum-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send around.*

circum-mūnio, ire, ivi, ītum, *surround with walls, fortify round about.*

circummunītio, ōnis, f., *a fortifying round about*; *an investment of a town by siege.*

cĭrcumplector, plecti, plexus, *embrace, surround, encompass.*

circum-sisto, ĕre, stĕti, *to stand around, surround.*

circumspĭcĭo, ĕre, exi, ectum, *to look around.*

circumsto, stare, steti, *stand around.*

circumvallo, are, avi, atum, *surround with a rampart, blockade.*

circumvĕhor, vĕhi, vectus, *ride* or *sail around.*

circum-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come round* (esp. in a hostile way), *to surround, entrap.*

circumventus, a, um, p. part. circumvenio.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

cĭtatus, a, um, *hurried, moved* or *spurred on quickly.* [pl. part. of cito].

cĭtĕrior, adj., formed from citra; *on the nearer side, nearer.*

cĭtissimē, superl. of adv. cito, *most quickly.*

citrā, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

citro, adv. *hither.*

cīvis, is, c., *a citizen.*

cīvĭtās, ātis, f., *citizenship*; *a state* (i.e. *the body of citizens*). [civis.]

clam, adv. *secretly* [celo.]

clāmĭto, are, avi, atum, freq., *to keep calling out, to cry aloud.* [clamo.]

clāmor, ōris, m., *a shout, shouting.*

clandestīnus, a, um, adj., *secret, hidden.*

clārus, a, um, adj., *clear*; vox, *loud, distinct, clear.*

classis, is, f., *a fleet.*

claudo, ĕre, clausi, clausum, *shut, close*; claudere agmen, *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, i, m., *a nail, spike.*

clēmentia, ae, f., *kindness, mercy, clemency.*

clĭens, tis, m., *a dependant*; of nations, *vassals.*

clĭentēla, ae, f., *the condition of being dependent, vassalage.*

clīvus, i, m., *a slope, hill* [clino, to lean.]

cŏăcervo, are, avi, atum, *heap up, collect.*

cŏactus, ūs, m., *a forcing, compulsion.*

coagmento, are, avi, atum, *fasten together, connect.*

coarto, are, avi, atum, *to press*, or *squeeze together* [arto, make tight.]

coēgi, v. cogo.

co-ēmo, ĕmĕre, ēmi, emptum, *buy up, purchase.*

cŏ-ēo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to come together, meet, assemble.*

coelestis, e, adj., *heavenly*; *celestial*; as subst., coelestes, ium, pl., *the gods.*

coepi, isse, v. defect., *to begin.*

coerceo, ēre, ercui, ercitum, *to confine, restrain, check.*

cōgĭtātio, ōnis, f., *a thinking, deliberation, reflection.*

cōgĭto, are, avi, atum, *to consider, ponder, reflect upon.*

cognātĭo, ōnis, f., *kindred.*

cognĭtus, a, um, p. part. cognosco.

cognosco, ĕre, gnōvi, gnĭtum, *to discover, learn, take cognizance of*; in perf. tenses, *know.*

cōgo, ĕre, cŏēgi, cŏactum, *to bring together, collect*; *compel.* [co-ago.]

cŏhors, tis, f., *a cohort*; $\frac{1}{10}$ *of a legion.*

cohortatio, ōnis, f., *encouraging, encouragement.*

cŏhortor, ari, atus, *to animate, encourage, exhort.*

co-iĕrim, v. co-eo.

collatus, part. of confero.

col-laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to praise highly.*

collectus, a, um, part. colligo.

collĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to get together, collect*; *to get, acquire*; se colligere, *recover one's self, rally.* [con, lego.]

collis, is, m., *a hill.*

col-lŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to station.*

col-lŏqium, ii., *n., a conference.*

col-lŏquor, i., locūtus, *to confer; hold a conference.*

cŏlo, ĕre, cŏlŭi, cultum, *to cultivate*; *to worship, honor.*

cŏlōnĭa, ae, f., *a colony, a body of emigrants, colonists.* [colonus, colo.]

cŏlor, ōris, m., *colour.*

comburo, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *burn up, consume.*

cŏmĕs, ĭtis, m., *a companion.*

comitium, i, n., the place in the Roman Forum where the elections were held; hence *the assembly, the elections.*

cŏmitor, ari, atus sum, *to accompany.*

commeātus, ūs, m., *journey, voyage, convoy; provisions, supplies.* [cum, meo.]

com-mĕmŏro, are, avi, atum, *to call to mind, recount, relate.*

commendo, are, avi, atum, *commit* or *entrust to* for protection.

commentarius, i, m., *memoir, commentary.*

commeo, -meare, -meavi, -meatum, *to go to and fro, visit, resort to.*

commīlito, ōnis, *a fellow soldier, comrade.*

com-mĭnus, adv., *hand to hand.* [con, manus.]

commissūra, ae. f., *a joint, juncture.*

com-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send or bring together*; pugnam or proelium, *to join battle*; *to do, commit* (esp. any bad or unworthy action).

commŏdē, adv., -ius, -issime, *conveniently, advantageously, suitably.*

com-mŏdus, a, um, adj., *suitable*; subst. commodum, i, n, *advantage, profit.*

commonefacio, facere, fēci, factum, *remind, impress upon.*

com-mŏror, ari, atus, *to delay, stay.*

commŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *agitate, disturb, alarm, excite, influence.*

commūnĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make common, share* (with anyone), *to consult.* [communis.]

com-mūnĭo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ītum, *to fortify strongly, intrench.*

com-mūnis, e, adj., *common, general.*

commūtātĭo. ōnis, f., *change, alteration.*

com-mūto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to change wholly, to exchange, replace.*

1. **compăro**, (conparo), are, avi, atum, *prepare, get together, secure, collect* [com, paro.]

2. **compăro**, are, avi, atum, *compare* [compar, like.]

compello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *drive together, collect ; force, compel.*

compendium, i, n., *a saving, gain, profit.*

com-pĕrĭo, īre, pĕri, pertum, *to find out for certain, learn, ascertain.*

compertus, part. of comperio, *known, certain.*

complector, i, plexus sum, *embrace, surround, include.*

com-plĕo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *to fill full, fill up.*

complures, a or ia, *several.*

com-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to carry together, collect.*

com-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to catch* or *seize hold of.*

com-prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to confirm, establish, make good.*

cōnātum, i, n., *an attempt.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *an attempt.*

cōnătus, a. um, pf. part. of cōnor.

concēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *yield, grant.*

concerto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to contend.*

concessus, ūs, m., *permission, leave.*

con-cĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, *to fall together, to fall down.*

concīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *cut up, cut to pieces, cut into sections* [caedo.]

concĭlĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to reconcile.*

concĭlium, ĭi, n., *an assembly, meeting, council.*

concĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to rouse up, stir up, excite.* [con, cieo.]

con-clāmo, are, avi, atum, *to call* or *cry out together, to shout.*

codcludo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *shut up, enclose, confine* [claudo.]

concrepo, āre, ui, ĭtum, *rattle, crash.*

con-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run together, flock.*

con-curso, āre, freq., *to run to and fro, rush about.*

concursus, ūs, m., *a running* or *flocking together, a concourse, collision.*

condemno, are, avi, atum, *condemn, sentence* [damus.]

condĭcĭo, ōnis, f., *a condition* (of a bargain), *terms ; condition (=state, circumstances.)*

condōno, are, avi, atum, *give up, forgive, excuse, pardon.*

con-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead* or *bring together ; to hire.*

confectus, v. conficio.

con-fercĭo, īre, no, perf., fertum, *to cram, stuff* or *press close together.* [farcio.]

con-fertus, a, um, part. confercio ; adj., *dense, close-packed, crowded.*

con-fĕro, -ferre, contŭli, collātum, *to bring* or *gather together.*

con-festim, adv., *forthwith.*

con-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to finish, accomplish, perform ; to wear out* (with wounds), *exhaust.*

con-fīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum, *to believe, trust, rely on.*

configo, fīgere, fixi, fixum, *fasten together, join.*

confīnis, e, adj., *bordering on, adjoining.*

con-fīnĭum, ĭi, n., *limit, border,* (of lands); *district.*

confio, fiĕri, irreg. pass. of **conficio**, —regular form **conficior**, vii., 58.

confirmatio, ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion, encouragement.*

con-firmo, are, avi, atum, *to make firm, encourage*; 2. *to assert, protest* or *pledge one's self to* (a thing.)

confisus, pf. part. of confido, *relying on, trusting to.*

con-fĭtĕor, ēri, fessus, *to acknowledge, confess.*

confixus, part. of **configo.**

con-flāgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to burn, be consumed.*

con-flictātus, a, um, part. conflicto, *harassed, distressed.*

conflicto, are, avi, atum, *dash against* or *together, struggle with*—pass. *be harassed.*

con-flīgo, ĕre, flixi, flictum, *to clash with, dash together, engage with.*

confluens, entis, m., *meeting of two streams*; *confluence.*

confiuo, ĕre, fluxi, no supine, *flow together*; *flock together.*

confŭgio, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee for refuge.*

confundo, ere, fūdi, fūsum, *pour together, mix, blend, unite.*

congero, ĕre, gessi, gestum, *bear, bring* or *carry together, collect, heap* or *pile up.*

con-grĕdior, i, gressus sum, *to meet, to engage in fight*: congrĕdi cum, *to make common cause with.*

congressus, a, um, part. of **congredior.**

congressus, ūs, m., *a coming together, encounter, engagement.*

con-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to cast, fling, hurl.*

coniectūra, ae, f., *a conjecture, inference.*

con-iunctim adv., *jointly, in common.*

con-iungo, ĕre, nxi, ctum, *to join, unite.*

coniunx, coniŭgis, c., *a husband* or *wife, spouse* [iungo.]

con-iūrātĭo, ōnis, f., *a conspiracy.* [con-iuro.]

coniūro, are, avi, atum, *take oath together, league together, conspire.*

con-laudo, v. **col-laudo.**

con-lŏco, v. **col-loco.**

con-lŏquĭum, v. **col-loquium.**

con-lŏquor, v. **col-loquor.**

cōnor, ari, atus, *to attempt, try.*

con-paro, v. **comparo.**

con-pello, v. **compello.**

con-plūres, v. **complures.**

conquiesco, ĕre, quiēvi, quiētum, *rest, repose.*

con-quīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *to search out, seek after.* [con-quaero.]

consanguineus, a, um, adj., *of the same blood*; as subst., m., *relative, kinsman.*

con scendo, ĕre, ndi, nsum, *to climb, mount, go on board.*

con-scĭentĭa, ae, f., *consciousness.*

conscisco, ĕre, scīvi, scītum, *decree, appoint*—**sibi mortem consciscere**, *commit suicide.*

conscius, a, um, adj., *conscious, accessory to.*

con-scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write*; *to enlist, enrol.*

consecratus, a, um, part. consecro.

con-secro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make sacred, consecrate.*

con-sector, āri, ātus sum, *to chase, pursue.*

con-sēdi, pf. of consīdo.

consensio, ōnis, f., *agreement, unanimity.*

consensus, ūs, m., *consent, assent, united opinion.*

con-sentĭo, sentīre, sensi, sensum, *to agree, make common cause.*

con-sĕquor, sĕqui, secūtus, *to follow up, follow; obtain, attain, acquire.*

conservo, are, avi, atum, *save, spare, maintain.*

con-sīdo, ĕre, sēdi, sessum, *to take a seat, sit down; pitch a camp.*

consĭlĭum, ĭi, n., *plan, counsel; council of war.*

con-sĭmĭlis, e, adj., *very like.*

con-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, *to place one's self, stand*; 2. *to consist in* or *of.*

consobrīnus, i, *born of a mother's sister; cousin* [soror.]

con-sōlor, āri, ātus sum, *to cheer, comfort.*

conspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*

con-spĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to behold, descry, observe.*

conspĭcor, āri, ātus, *to get sight of, see, perceive.*

conspīro, are, avi, atum, *agree, conspire* [spiro, breathe].

constanter, adv., *steadily, uniformly, resolutely.*

constantia, ae, f., *firmness; constancy, resolution.*

con-stat, stāre, impers. v., *it is agreed, well known, it is clear.*

consterno, are, avi, atum, *alarm, terrify.*

consterno, ĕre, stravi, stratum, *strew over; cover.*

con-stīpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to crowd* or *press closely together.*

con-stĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to draw up, arrange; to appoint; to decide, settle, determine; to resolve.*

consto, stāre, stiti, stātum, *stand still, remain; consist in, depend on; cost.* See **constat**.

constratus. See **consterno**.

consŭesco, ĕre, suēvi, suētum, *to grow accustomed*; in perf tenses, *to be accustomed, to be wont.*

consŭētūdo, ĭnis, f, *custom, usage.* [consuesco]

consuētus. See **consuesco**.

consul, ŭlis, m., *consul.* Two consuls were chosen annually as the chief magistrates of Rome.

consulātus, ūs, n., *the consulship, office of consul,*

consŭlo, ĕre, lŭi, ltum, *to take counsel*; with dat., *to have regard to, consult the interests of.*

consulto, adv., *intentionally.* [consulo.]

consulto, are, avi, atum, *to consult.*

consultum, i, n., *a resolution, decree.*

con-sūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take up, use up, consume, waste, spend.*

consumptus. *V.* consumo.

con-surgo, ĕre, surrexi, surrectum, *to arise, rise up.*

con-tăbŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to line with planks.*

contāgĭo, ōnis, f., *a touching, contact, contamination.*

contāmino, are, avi, atum, *taint, pollute.*

con-temno, ĕre, tempsi, temptum, *to despise, hold cheap.*

contemptĭo, ōnis, f., *contempt, scorn.*

contemptus, ūs, m., *contempt, scorn.*

con-tendo, ĕre, di, tum, *to contend* (as rivals); *to fight; strive, make an effort.*

contentĭo, ōnis, f., *contest, rivalry.*

contestor, ari, atus sum, *call to witness, supplicate, appeal to.*

contexo, ĕre, texui, textum, *weave, bind together, join.*

contĭnens, entis, f., *the mainland*; also adj., *unbroken, continuous.*

continenter, adv., *constantly, incessantly.*

con-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to keep, keep in, restrain*; (of space) *to contain* [con, teneo.]

con-tingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, *to touch, reach.*

continuatio, ōnis, f., *continuation, succession.*

continuo, adv., *forthwith, immediately.*

contĭnŭus, a, um, adj., *unbroken, continuous.*

contĭo, ōnis, f., *an assembly*; *a speech, harangue.*

contionor, ari, atus sum, *address, harangue.*

contra, prep. w. acc. and adv., *against*; *in opposition, in reply.*

con-trăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to draw together, draw in, lessen.*

contrarius, a, um, *opposite, contrary.*

contrōversĭa, ae, f., *contention, dispute.*

contŭmēlĭa, ae, f., *affront, insult*; *buffeting, rough usage*; c. verborum, *insulting language, scoffs, taunts.*

convalesco, ĕre, valui, no sup., *to get well, recover strength.*

convallis, is, f., *a valley enclosed on all sides.*

convĕho, vehĕre, vexi, vectum, *bring together, collect, convey.*

con-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come together, assemble, muster.*

conventus, ūs, m., *an assembly*; *a court of justice*; plur., *the assizes*; (of soldiers) *parade.*

con-verto, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn, direct*; *face about.*

convinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *conquer utterly*; *convict, prove.*

convŏco, are, avi, atum, *call together, summon.*

cŏ-ŏrĭor, īri, ortus, *to arise.*

cōpĭa, ae, f., *abundance, a sufficient supply*; in plur., *forces.*

cōpiōsus, a, um, *well supplied, wealthy, rich.*

cōpula, ae, f., *band*: *grappling iron.*

cor, cordis, n., *the heart.*

cōram, adv. and prep. w. abl., *in the presence of*; *face to face.*

corium, i. n., *thick skin, hide.*

cornu, ūs, n., *a horn.*

corōna, ae, f., *crown*; *circle.*

corpus, ŏris, n., *a body.*

corripio, ĕre, ripui, reptum, *seize violently*; *carry off.*

corrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break to pieces*; *spoil, destroy, ruin.*

cortex, ĭcis, m. and f., *bark* of a tree.

cōrus ventus, m., *the north-west wind.*

cŏtīdĭānus, a, um, adj., *daily.*

cŏtīdĭe, adv., *daily.*

crassitudo, inis, f., *thickness.*

crātis, is, f., *wicker-work, hurdle.*

crēber, bra, um, adj., *frequent.*

crēbro, adv., *frequently, often.*

crēdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to believe.*

crĕmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to burn.*

creo, are, avi, atum, *create, make*; *choose, elect, appoint.*

cresco, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *grow, increase*; *become great or powerful.*

crīmen, inis, n., *charge, accusation*; less commonly, *fault, crime.*

crŭcĭātus, ūs, m., *torture.* [crucio, crux.]

crudēlis, ĕ, adj., *cruel.*

crudēlitas, ātis, f., *cruelty.*

crudēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, ūris, n., *a leg.*

cŭbīle, is, n., *a place of rest, couch, lair.* [cubo.]

culpa, ae, f., *fault.*

cultus, ūs, m., *way of living, civilization.* [colo.]

cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

cum (quum), conj., *when; since; although.*

cunctatio, ōnis, f., *delay, hesitation, tardiness.*

cunctor, ari, atus sum, *delay, hesitate.*

cunctus, a, um, adj., *all together, all.* [co-iunctus]

cŭneātim, adv., *in the form of a wedge.*

cŭneus, i, m, *a wedge; a wedge-formation*, military term.

cunīculus, i, m., literally, *rabbit; burrow*; in military sense, *a mine.*

cŭpĭde, ĭus, issime, adv., *eagerly.*

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, f., *covetousness, desire, greed.* [cupidus, cupio.]

cŭpĭdus, a, um, adj., *eager for, desirous of.* [cupio.]

cŭpĭo, ĕre, īvi or ĭi, ītum, *to wish;* WITH DAT., *to be well inclined to*, =faveo.

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, ae, f., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble.*

cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to care for*; w. acc. of gerundive, *to cause* or *order* anything to be done.

curro, ĕre, cucurri, cursum, *run.*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *speed; course.* [curro.]

custōdĭa, ae, f., *a guard, watch.*

custōdio, ire, ivi, ītum, *guard, defend.*

custōs, ōdis, c., *a guard, keeper, watch.*

D.

D.=**Decimus**, a proper name.

damnātus, a, um, part. damno, *condemned*; as subst., **damnati**, orum, m., *convicts, criminals.*

damno, are, avi, atum, *condemn, sentence.*

damnum, i, n., *hurt, injury, loss.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; about, concerning.*

dēbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to owe.*

dē-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart.*

dĕcem, num. adj., *ten.*

deceptus. See decipio.

dē-cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *to decide, settle.*

dēcerto, are, avi, atum, *fight, engage in battle.*

dēcessus, ūs, m., *retreat, withdrawal.*

dēcĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, no supine, *fall down.*

dĕcĭmus, a, um, ord. num, adj., *tenth.*

dēcipio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *deceive.*

dēclāro, are, avi, atum, *make clear, declare, announce.*

dēclīvis, e, adj., *sloping, descending.*

dēclīvitās, ātis, f., *declivity, descent.*

dēcrētum, i, n. See **decerno**.

decŭmānus, in the phrase *decumāna porta, the rear or main entrance of a Roman camp,* placed farthest from the enemy, opposite to the *porta praetoria*, and named from the fact that the 10th cohort encamped near it.

dĕcŭrio, ōnis, m., *a decurion*, a cavalry officer in charge of ten men.

dēcurro, ĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run down, hasten, move off.*

dēdĕcus, ŏris, n., *disgrace.*

dēditīcius, a, um, *one who has surrendered.*

dēditio, ōnis, f., *a surrender.*

dē-do, -dĕre, -didi, -ditum, *to deliver* or *give up, to devote.*

dē-dūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *to lead away, withdraw* (troops); (of ships), *to bring down, launch.*

dēductus. V. deduco.

dēfatīgātio, ōnis, f., *weariness, fatigue, exhaustion.*

dēfătigātus, part. of defătīgo, *wearied out, exhausted.*

dēfatīgo, are, avi, atum, *tire out, exhaust, fatigue.*

dēfectĭo, ōnis, f., *rebellion, revolt.* [deficio.]

dē-fendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to repel, ward off.*

defensio, ōnis, f., *defence.*

dēfensor, ōris, m., *a defender.*

dē-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to announce, report; to bear down, carry down, bring.*

defessus, a, um, pf. part. of **defetiscor**, *wearied, worn out.*

dē-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to revolt; to fail, be wanting.*

dē-fīgo, ĕre, xi, xum, *to fasten* or *fix down* or *in.*

dēfīnio, ire, ivi, ītum, *set bounds to, limit, define, fix, assign.*

dēfluo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow down, flow away.*

dēfŏre, fut. inf. of desum, =defuturum esse.

dēformis, ĕ, adj., *ill-shaped, ugly.*

dē-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee from, avoid, shun.*

dē-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to cast* or *throw down; to disappoint.*

dēiectus, a, um. See **de-icio.**

dēiectus, ūs, m., *descent, slope, declivity.* [iacio.]

dĕinceps, adv., *one after the other, in succession, in turn.* [deinde, capio].

dĕinde, adv., *thereafter, afterwards, then, next.* [de, inde].

dē-lātus. See defero.

dēlecto, are, avi, atum, *delight, please*; in pass. *take pleasure in.*

dēlectus, a, um. See **deligo.**

dēlectus, ūs, *selection*; *levy* (of soldiers). [deligo.]

dēlĕo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *to destroy.*

dēlībero, are, avi, atum, *weigh* (mentally), *deliberate, ponder, consult.* [libra, a balance].

dēlībro, are, avi, atum, *strip off the bark, peel.* [liber, bark.]

dēlictum, i, n., *offence, fault, crime.* [fr. pf. part. of delinquo.]

dē-lĭgo, āre, avi, atum, *to bind up, bind fast.* [ligo, "to bind."]

dē-lĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to choose* [lego, "choose."]

dēlĭtesco, ĕre, litui, no supine, *hide, conceal one's self, lie in wait.* [lateo, lie hid].

dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.* [demens, de, mens].

demessus. See **dēmĕto.**

dēmĕto, ĕre, messui, messum, *cut down, reap, mow.*

dē-migro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to retire from, remove, emigrate.*

dēmĭnŭo minŭĕre, minŭi, minūtum, *lessen, take away from, impair.* [mīnus.]

dē-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send* or *let down*; se, *to descend.*

dēmo, ĕre, dempsi, demptum, *to take off, remove.*

dē-monstro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to show, point out.*

dēmŏror, ari, atus sum, *delay, linger; hinder.*

dēmum, adv., *at last.*

dēnĕgo, are, avi, atum, *deny, refuse.*

dēni, ae, a, dis. adj., *ten apiece, ten.*

dēnĭque, adv., *at last, finally*; *in short, in a word.*

dē-nuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to declare.*

dē-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive away, remove.*

dē-perdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to lose, lose utterly.*

dē-pĕreo, īre, perīi, *to perish utterly.*

dē-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to lay down.*

dēpŏpulor, āri, ātus sum, *to ravage, lay waste.*

dēporto, are, avi, atum, *carry off, remove.*

dēposco, ĕre, poposci, no supine, *demand, require.*

dēpositus. See **dēpōno.**

dēprecātor, ōris, m., *an intercessor.*

dēprĕcor, āri, ātus sum, *to avert by entreaty, beg off.*

dē-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to catch, seize upon.*

dēprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *press down, sink.* [premo].

dēpugno, are, avi, atum, *fight* (to an issue).

dēpulsus. See **depello.**

dērīvo, are, avi, atum, *draw off* (of a stream); *turn aside.* [rivus.]

dē-rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take away withdraw.*

dēscendo, ĕre, scendi, scensum, *to descend.*

dēsĕco, are, secui, sectum, *cut off.* [seco, cut.]

dē-sĕro, ĕre, rŭi, rtum, *to abandon, forsake.*

dēsertor, ōris, m., *a runaway, deserter.* [desero.]

dēsertus, a, um, part. desero, *deserted*; adj., (of places) *solitary, waste.*

dēsīdĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wish.*

dēsĭdĭa, ae, f., *idleness, sloth.*

dēsigno, are, avi, atum, *mark out, point out, describe, appoint*; *mean, signify.*

desĭlio, īre, sĭlŭi, sultum, *to leap down.*

desisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum, *to cease from.*

dēspectus, a, um. See **despicio.**

dēspectus, ūs, m., *a looking down, a view* from a height; pl. *heights.*

dēspērātio, ōnis, f., *despair.*

dē-spēro, are, avi, atum, *to despair.*

despĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to despise, look down upon.*

dēspŏlio, iare, iavi, iatum, *despoil, rob, plunder.*

dēstĭno, are, avi, atum, *make fast, bind*; *determine, appoint.*

destituo, uĕre, ui, ūtum, *put aside, desert, abandon.* [statuo].

destrictus. See **destringo.**

destringo, ĕre, strinxi, strictum, *strip off, unsheath, draw* (a sword).

dē-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be wanting, fail.*

dēsŭper, adv., *from above.*

dētĕrior, ius, compar. adj., *inferior, worse*; superl. deterrimus.

dē-terrĕo, ēre, terrŭi, terrĭtum, *to frighten thoroughly, deter.*

dēterrĭtus. See **deterreo.**

detestor, āri, ātus sum, *to curse, call down curses upon.*

dētĭneo, ēre, ui, tentum, *keep back, delay, detain, stop.*

dētractus. See **detraho.**

detrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to withdraw from.*

dētrecto, are, avi, atum, *avoid, decline, escape.* [tracto, handle].

dētrīmentōsus, a, um, *injurious, hurtful.*

dētrīmentum, i, n., *damage, loss.* ["a rubbing off," de, tero.]

dētrūdo, ĕre, trūsi, trūsum, *thrust off, remove.*

dēturbo, are, avi, atum, *cast down, dislodge, drive away.*

de-ūro, ĕre, ūssi, ūstum, *burn up, consume.*

dĕus, i, m., *a deity, a god.*

dē-vĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to carry down, convey.*

dēvĕnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *come from*; *depart to, arrive at.*

dēvexus, a, um, adj., *sloping, steep.*

dēvinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *conquer completely.*

dēvŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call down.*

devōtus, pf. part. of devoveo; as adj., *attached to, faithful to*; as subst., *devoted follower.*

dē-vŏvĕo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow, devote.*

dexter, dextra, dextrum, adj., *on the right-hand side, right.*

dextra, ae, f. (scil., manus) *the right hand.*

dĭcio, ōnis, f., *sway, dominion, authority, lordship.*

dīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to say*: dicere diem, *to fix, name a day.*

dĭco, are, avi, atum, *devote, give up.*

dictio, ōnis, f., *speaking, pleading.* [dico.]

dictum, i, n, *word, command.*

dīdūco ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead in different directions, divide, separate, distribute, scatter.*

dĭes, ēi, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), *a day.*

dif-fĕro, ferre, distŭli dīlātum, *to differ.*

diffĭcĭlis, e, adj., *difficult.*

difficultās, ātis, f., *difficulty.*

difficulter, adv., *with difficulty*, compar., difficilius.

dif-fīdo, ĕre, fisus sum, *to distrust, despair of.*

diffīsus, a, um, pf. part. of **diffīdo**; as adj., *distrusting, doubtful.*

dif-fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum, *to spread out.*

dĭgĭtus, i, m., *finger*; as a measure, the 16th part of a Roman foot, *an inch, finger's breadth.* —**digitus pollex,** *the thumb.*

dignĭtās, ātis, f., *dignity.*

dignus, a, um, adj., *worthy, fitting.*

dī-iūdĭco, are, avi, atum, *to decide, determine.*

dīlectus, a, um, part, diligo.

dīlĭgenter, -ius, -issime, adv., *attentively, carefully.*

dīlĭgentĭa, ae, f., *carefulness.*

dīlĭgo, ĕre, lexi, lectum, *to esteem highly, to love.*

dīmensus. See dimetior.

dīmētior, iri, mensus sum, *measure off.*

dīmicātio, ōnis, f., *fierce combat, hot engagement.*

dīmĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

dīmĭdius, a, um, adj., *half;* dimidium, n., *the half.* [medius.]

dī-mitto, ĕre. mīsi, missum, *to send out in various directions; to forego, let slip, relinquish, abandon.*

dīrecte, adv., *straight, directly.*

dīrectus, a, um, part. dirigo; also adj., *straight.*

dīrĭgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, *to form into a straight line; draw up troops in battle array.*

dīrĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *take apart, break up*; *break off, put an end to.* [dis, emo.]

diripio, ĕre, ripui, reptum, *tear asunder, plunder, ravage, pillage.* [dis, rapio.]

dis- or **di-** adverbial prefix, *apart, asunder.*

dis-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart.*

disceptātor, ōris, m., *arbitrator, umpire, judge.*

discerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *distinguish between.*

discessus, ūs, m., *departure.*

disciplīna, ae, f., *training, discipline.*

disclūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *keep apart, hold apart, separate, divide.* [claudo.]

disco, discĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn by study.*

discrīmen, inis, n., *risk, danger; difference.*

discŭtio, ĕre, cussi, cussum, *shatter, disperse, clear away.* [quatio.]

disicio, ĕre, ieci, iectum, *drive asunder, scatter, rout.* [iacio.]

dispār, păris, adj., *unequal.*

dispăro, are, avi, atum, *divide, part, separate.*

di-spergo, ĕre, si, sum, *to scatter about, disperse.*

dispersus, a, um, p. part. used as adj., *scattered* [dispergo.]

dis-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to set in different places, to station.*

dĭspŭtātĭo, ōnis, f., *arguing, disputing; an argument.*

dis-pŭto, are, avi, atum, *to investigate, treat of, discuss.*

dissensĭo, ōnis, f., *disagreement, discord.*

dis-sentĭo, īre, si, sum, *to differ in opinion, disagree.*

dissĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sĭtum, *plant here and there, place at intervals.* [sero, plant.]

dissimŭlo, are, avi, atum, *disguise, conceal.* [similis.]

dissĭpātus, a, um, part. dissipo.

dis-sĭpo, āre, avi, atum, *to disperse, scatter.*

dissuādeo, ēre, suāsi, suāsum, *dissuade, advise against, oppose.*

distĭneo, ēre, ui, tentum, *keep apart; hold off; separate.*

disto, stare, no pf. or supine, *stand apart, be separated.*

distrăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *drag asunder, pull apart, divide.*

dis-trĭbŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to divide, distribute.*

ditissimus, see **dives.**

dĭū, -tĭus, -tissĭme, adv., *for a long time, long.*

diurnus, a, um, adj., *of the day, by day.* [dies.]

dĭūtĭnus, a, um, adj., *enduring for a long time, lasting, long.*

diutissimē, see **diu.**

diuturnitās, ātis, f., *length of time, long duration.*

diuturnus, a, um, adj., *long* in time. [diu.]

dīversus, a, um, part. diverto; adj., *in different directions, apart, remote.*

dīvēs, vĭtis, comp. **divitior** or **ditior**, superl. **divitissimus** or **ditissimus**, *rich, wealthy.*

dī-vĭdo, ĕre, vīsi, vīsum, *to divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine.*

do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *to give.*

dŏcĕo, ēre, ŭi, ctum, *to teach, instruct, tell.*

dŏcumentum, i, n., *proof, warning.*

dŏlĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to grieve for, take to heart.*

dŏlor, ōris, m., *pain* (of body or mind), *grief, chagrin.*

dŏlus, i, m., *craft, fraud, deceit, stratagem.*

dŏmestĭcus, a, um, adj., *domestic*; **bellum domesticum**, *intestine, civil war.*

dŏmĭcĭlium, i, n., *dwelling.*

dŏmĭnor, ari, atus sum, *be master, have dominion.*

dŏmĭnus, i, m., *master, lord, owner.*

dŏmus, ūs, f., *house, home;* **domi**, loc. case, *at home.*

dōno, are, avi, atum, *give, present.*

dōnum, i, n., *a gift.*

dōs, ōtis, f., *dowry, marriage portion.*

dŭbitātio, ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation.*

dŭbĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to doubt, hesitate.*

dŭbĭus, a, um, adj., *doubtful.*

dŭbĭum, i, n., as subst., *uncertainty, risk.*

dŭcenti, ae, a, adj., plur., *two hundred.*

dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead; to hold, consider.*

ductus, ūs, m., *leadership, the lead, command.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

dŭŏ, ae, o, card. num. adj., *two.*

duŏdĕcim, card. num. adj., *twelve.*

duŏ-decimus, a, um, ord. num., *twelfth.*

duŏdēni, ae, a, dis. adj., *twelve apiece, twelve.*

duplĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to double.*

dūrĭtĭa, ae, f., *hardness, hardness of life.*

dūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harden, make hardy.*

dūrus, a, um, adj., *hard.*

dux, dŭcis, m. and f., *a leader.*

E.

ē or **ex**, (**e** before consonants, **ex** before vowels) prep. with abl., *out of, from the inside of; in accordance with; in consequence of; following after, on;* **ex unā parte**, *on one side;* **ex usu**, *of advantage.*

ĕā, (*sc.* parte or viâ), adv., *on that side, by that way, there.* [is.]

ēdīco, ĕre, dīxi, dīctum, *make known, command.*

ē-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn off by heart.*

ēditus, a, um, *elevated, high,* [ēdo].

ē-do, dĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *put forth, exhibit; elevate.*

ē-dŏceo, ēre, dŏcui, doctum, *teach, instruct, inform, tell.*

ē-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead forth, draw out.*

effarcio, īre, farsi, fartum, *stop up, stuff, fill.*

effēmino, are, avi, atum, *make womanish, weaken, enervate*

ef-fĕro, ferre, extŭli, ēlātum, *to bring out; to set forth, publish;* in pass., *to be puffed up, elated, inspirited.*

ef-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to bring to pass, accomplish, effect, produce.*

effŏdio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, *dig out, tear out.*

effossus. See **effodio**.

ef-fūgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to escape.*

ĕgens, ntis, pres. part. of egeo, *wanting, needy.*

ĕgĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to lack, need, be in want of.*

ĕgestās, ātis, f., *neediness, extreme poverty.*

ĕgo, mei, personal pron., *I*; pl. nōs, nostrum.

ĕgŏmet, pl. nosmet, emphatic form of ego.

ē-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to come* or *go out.*

ēgrĕgiē, adv., *remarkably, splendidly.*

ē-grĕgĭus, a, um, adj., *distinguished, remarkable.* [e, grege, i.e. *out of the* (common) *herd.*]

ēgressus, a, um, part. egredior.

ēgressus, ūs, m., *going out, the way out, departure.*

ēicio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to turn out, cast out, cast up.*

ēius-mŏdi, *of that kind, of such a kind.* [is, modus]

ē-lābor, i, elapsus, *to slip away, escape.*

ēlapsus, a, um, part. elabor.

ēlātus. See **effero.**

ēlectus. See **eligo.**

ĕlĕphantus, i, and ĕlĕphas, antis, m., *an elephant.*

ēlĭcĭo, ĕre, lĭcŭi and lexi, lĭcĭtum, *to entice* or *draw out.*

ēlĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *choose out, select, pick.*

ēmĭgro, are, avi, atum, *move out, emigrate.*

ēmĭneo, ēre, minui, no supine, *project, stand forth.*

ēmĭnus, *at a distance, from afar,* [e, manus.]

ēmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *send forth, let go, hurl, let slip.*

ĕmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *buy, purchase.*

ēnascor, nasci, natus sum, *grow out, shoot out* (of branches.)

ĕnim, conj. *for.*

ēnītor, i, nixus or nīsus sum, *struggle, strive.*

ē-nuntĭo, āre, avi, atum, *to disclose, tell.*

ĕō, adv., 1. an old dat. or acc., *thither, to that place*; 2. abl. of **is** used as adv. in phrase: **eo quod**, *for the reason that;* 3. abl. used as adv. of degree, *the, by that much.*

eo, īre, ivi or ii, ĭtum, *to go.*

eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*

ephippium, i, *saddle-cloth.*

ephippiatus, a, um, adj., *furnished with saddle-cloths, saddle-using.*

ĕpistŏla, ae, f., *a letter.*

ĕpŭlae, ārum, f. (irreg. plur. of epulum), *banquets, feasts.*

ĕquĕs, ĭtis, m., *a horseman, rider; a* (*Roman*) *knight;* in plur., equites, *cavalry*; used also of *the "Knights"* of Gaul. [equus.]

ĕquester, tris, tre, adj., *belonging to cavalry, cavalry.*

ĕquĭtātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

ĕquus, i, m., *a horse.*

ērectus, a, um, (pf. part. of **ērigo**) adj., *high.*

ēreptus, v. eripio.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.*

ĕrgo, adv., *therefore, then.*

ē-rĭgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, *to raise* or *set up.*

ērĭpio, ĕre, rĭpŭi, reptum, *to snatch away;* with se, *to escape, flee.*

erro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to stray, wander; to wander from the truth, be mistaken.*

ērumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *burst forth, sally, make a sortie.*

ēruptĭo, ōnis, f., *a breaking out;* (of troops) *a sally.*

essĕda, ae, f., *war-chariot.*

essĕdārius, i, m., *charioteer, chariot warrior.*

ĕt, conj., *and, also;* et..et, *both..and.*

ĕtĭam, conj., *also, even, furthermore.*

etiamsi, conj., *even if, although.*

etsi, conj., *although.*

ēvādo, ĕre, vāsi, vāsum, *escape.*

ēvello, ĕre, velli, vulsum, *pull out.*

ēvĕnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *turn out, happen.*

ēventus, ūs, m., *issue, consequence, result.* [e-venio.]

ēvŏcatus, a um, pf. part. of **ēvoco**; as subst. *a veteran* serving voluntarily after his time was out.

ē-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call out, summon.*

ēvŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *fly* or *rush forth.*

ex, prep., w. abl., see **e.**

exactus, see exĭgo.

exagito, are, avi, atum, *drive out, annoy, harass.*

exāmĭno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to weigh in the balance, examine, test.* [examen, *the tongue of the balance.*]

exănĭmātus, a, um, part. exanimo.

ex-ănĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill.* [ex, anima, breath].

ex-ardesco, ĕre, arsi, arsum, *to burst into a blaze, take fire.*

ex-audĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to hear distinctly.*

ex-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth* or *out; to go out from; leave.*

ex-cello, ĕre, cellŭi, celsum, *to be eminent, excel.*

ex-celsus, a, um, pf. part. of excello; adj., *tall, lofty.*

excepto, are, avi, atum, *catch up, pick up* with the hands [excipio.]

exceptus, a, um, pf. part. of excipio.

ex-cĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch, take, capture; take in turn, relieve* (of sentinels, etc.).

excĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise, erect, build; to arouse, incite.*

ex-clūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *to shut out, cut off.*

ex-cōgĭto, are, avi, atum, *to think out, contrive.*

ex-crŭcĭo, are, avi, atum, *to torture.*

excŭbĭtor ōris, m., *sentinel* ["one who lies out," ex, cubo.]

excŭbo, are, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum, *lie out, keep watch.*

exculco, are, avi, atum, *tread down,* [ex, calx, the heel.]

excursio, ōnis, f., *a running out, a sally, sortie.*

excūsatio, ōnis, f., *excuse-making, apology, defence.*

excūso, are, avi, atum, *excuse, defend.*

exemplum, i, n., *example; warning, punishment.*

ex-ĕo, ire, ĭi, ĭtum, *to go forth* or *out.*

ex-ercĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to employ, keep busy; drill, exercise (troops).*

exercĭtatĭo, ōnis, f., *exercise, training, practice.* [exerceo].

exercitatus, a, um, *skilled, trained.*

exercĭtus, ūs, m., *an army.* [exerceo].

ex-haurĭo, īre, hausi, haustum, *to draw out, take out.*

exĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring to an end, complete.*

exiguē, adv., *barely, hardly*

exĭguĭtās, ātis, *smallness, shortness, small number, scantiness.*

exĭgŭus, a, um, adj., *small.*

exĭmius, a, um, *eminent, distinguished, excellent.*

existĭmātĭo, ōnis, f., *judgment, opinion.*

existĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

existo, (**ex-sisto**), ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, *to come forth, arise.*

exĭtus, ūs, m., *an issue, end, result.* [exeo].

expecto, v. **exspecto.**

expĕdio, ire, ivi, or ii, ītum, *set free, disengage, get ready.*

expĕdītĭo, ōnis, f., *a foray, incursion, expedition.*

expĕdītus, part., from expedio, *unimpeded, ready, easy, lightly equipped.*

ex-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive out, banish, expel.*

ex-pĕrĭor, iri, pertus, *to try.*

ex-pĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to atone for, make good.*

expleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill up, complete.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *a scout, spy.*

explōrātus, pf. part. of **exploro**, *ascertained for certain;* **pro explorato**, *as a fact.*

ex-plōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to search out, reconnoitre.*

ex-pōno, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsitum, *to land* (troops), *to set on shore* (nautical).

exporto, are, avi, atum, *carry out.*

exposco, ĕre, poposci, no supine, *demand.*

expŏsĭtus. See expono.

exprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *press out; extort; raise.*

expugnātio, ōnis, f., *attack, assault.*

expugno, are, avi, atum, *take by storm, capture, attack.*

expulsus, a, um, part. **expello.**

exquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *seek out, enquire, ask for.*

exquīsītus. See **exquiro.**

exsĕquor, sĕqui, secutus or sequutus sum, *follow out; maintain, enforce.*

exsĕro, ĕre, serui, sertum, *thrust out, make bare.*

exsertus. See **exsero.**

exsisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum, 1. *make to come forth*, 2. *come forth, arise, spring up, ensue; appear; project.*

exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wait, wait for, await.*

exspŏlio, iare, iavi, iatum, *deprive, strip, rob.*

exstinguo, uĕre, stinxi, stinctum, *quench, extinguish, destroy utterly.*

exsto (exto), āre, no perf. or sup., *to stand forth; stand out, project above.*

exstructus, a, um, part. exstruo.

ex-strŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to build up, raise, rear.*

exter or **externus**, a, um, adj.; *outer, outward.* Comp. **exterior**, *outer;* superl. **extremus**, *outermost, last, extreme.*

exterreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *frighten thoroughly, terrify.*

extimesco, ĕre, timui, no supine, *fear greatly, dread.*

extorqueo, ēre, torsi, tortum, *twist out, extort, force from.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond, outside of.*

ex-trăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *to drag out, waste.*

extrēmus, a, um, adj., super. of exterior, *furthest, extreme;* as subst., **extremum**, i, n., *the end.*

extrūdo, ĕre, trūsi, trūsum, *push out, force out.*

exŭl, is, m., *an exile, outlaw.*

ex-ŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to despoil, strip.*

exūro, ĕre, ūssi, ūstum, *burn up.* [ex, completely.]

F.

făber, i, m., *a smith, workman, mechanic* [root FA, in facio].

făcĭlĕ, adv., *easily.*

făcĭlis, e, adj., *easy.* [facio].

făcĭnus, ŏris, n., *a crime.* [facio].

făcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to do, make:* aliquem certiorem, *to inform, let one know.*

factio, ōnis, f., *a faction, party.*

factu, abl., supine of **facio.**

factum, i, n., *a deed, action, achievement.*

factus, a, um, part. fio.

făcultās, ātis, f., *means, opportunity.*

fāgus, i, f., *a beech-tree.*

fallo, ĕre, fefelli, falsum, *deceive, disappoint.*

falsus, a, um, part. fallo; adj., *false.*

falx, cis, f., *a grappling hook*, used in attacking fortifications.

fāma, ae, f., *report, rumor, tradition; tidings.* [for, fari.]

fămēs, is, f., *hunger, famine.*

fămilia, ae, f., *household; servants; family:* paterfamiliae, *master of a house.*

fămĭlĭāris, e, adj.; usu. as subst., **fămĭlĭāris**, is, m., *an intimate friend.* [familia.]

fămĭlĭārĭtās, ātis, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*

fās, n., indecl., *what is right, lawful, permitted by Heaven.*

fastīgātē, adv., *sloping.*

fastīgatus, a, um, adj., *sloping.* [fastigo, slope off to a point.]

fastigium, i, n., *top* of a roof or hill; *sloping side, descent, declivity.*

fātum, i, n., *fate.*

făveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, *to favor.*

fax, făcis, f., *torch, firebrand.*

felīcitās, ātis, f., *success.*

felīciter, adv., *fortunately, prosperously.*

fēmĭna, ae, f., *a woman.*

fĕmur, ŏris or ĭnis, n., *a thigh.*

fĕra, ae, f., *a wild animal.*

fĕrax, ācis, adj., *fertile.* [fero.]

fĕrē, adv., *almost, nearly.*

fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear, bring; to bear, endure; to assert, say.*

ferrāmentum, i, n., *an iron tool.*

ferraria, ae, f., *iron-mine.*

ferrarius, a, um, adj., *made of iron.*

ferrĕus, a, um, adj., *made of iron.* [ferrum.]

ferrum, i, n., *iron.*

fertĭlĭs, e, adj., *fertile, fruitful.*

fertilitās, ātis, f., *fertility.*

fĕrus, a, um, adj., *wild;* **fĕra**, ae, f., subst., *wild beast.*

fervĕfactus, a, um, part., *heated, made red-hot.* [ferveo, facio].

fervĕo, ēre, bŭi, *to be a-glow:* **ferventes glandes**, *red-hot bullets.*

fībŭla, ae, f., *brace.* [figo, fasten.]

fĭdēlis, ĕ, adj., *faithful, trustworthy, true.*

fĭdes, ĕi, f, *faith, confidence; assurance, word of honor.*

fiducia, ae, f., *trust, confidence.*

fĭgūra., ae, f., *form, shape.*

fīlia, ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. filiābus, *daughter.*

fīlĭus, ii, m., *a son.*

fingo, ĕre, finxi, fictum, *to form, devise, frame.*

fīnio, īre, īvi or ĭi, ītum, *to end; to determine* or *fix the limits of; to describe the extent of.* [finis.]

fīnis, is, m., *a boundary, border, limit;* **fines**, plur., *territory.*

fīnĭtĭmus, a, um, adj., *bordering, adjoining, neighboring;* plur. subst., **finitimi**, orum, m., *neighbors.*

fīo, fĭĕri, factus, v. irreg. (pass. of facio), *to be made, to be done, become, take place.*

firmĭter, adv., *steadily, firmly, strongly.*

firmĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *firmness, strength.*

firmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make strong, secure.*

firmus, a, um, adj., *strong, powerful.*

fistūca, ae, f., *rammer, pile-driver.*

flāgito, are, avi, atum, *ask earnestly, importune, demand.*

flamma, ae, f., *blaze, flame.*

flecto, ĕre, xi, xum, *to bend, curve.*

fleo, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep.*

flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*

flo, flāre, flāvi, flātum, *to blow.*

flōrens, ntis, pres. part. of floreo, *blooming, flourishing, prosperous, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*

fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*

flūmen, ĭnis, n., *a river.*

fluo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow.*

fŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *dig.*

foedus, ĕris, n., *a compact, treaty.*

fŏre=**futurum esse**, fut. infin. of **sum.**

fŏrem=**essem.** See **sum.**

fŏrīs, adv., *out of doors, outside, abroad.* [old abl.]

forma, ae, f., *shape.*

fors, fortis, f., *chance, luck.*

forte, adv., *perchance, peradventure*

fortis, e, adj., *brave.*

fortĭter, -tius, -tissime, adv., *bravely.*

fotĭtūdo, inis, f., *bravery, courage.*

fortuīto, adv., *by chance.*

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune:* in plur., *possessions, property.*

fortūnātus, a, um, adj., *successful, wealthy.*

fŏrum, i, n., *forum, market-place.*

fossa, ae, f, *a ditch, trench.* [fodio.]

fŏvĕa, ae, f, *a pit, pitfall* (for catching wild animals).

frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, *break, wreck, dash in pieces* (of ships); *break down, wear out* (of men).

frāter, tris, m., *a brother.*

frāternus, a, um, *of a brother, brotherly.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, deception.*

frĕmĭtus, ūs, m., *din, noise.*

frĕquens, entis, adj., *crowded, thronging, in large numbers.*

frētus, a, um, adj., *relying upon* (governs abl.).

frīgidus, a, um, adj., *cold.*

frīgus, ŏris, n., *cold.*

frons, tis, f., *the forehead.*

fructuōsus, a, um, *fruitful, fertile.*

fructus, ūs, m., *produce, fruit:* of money, *interest.*

frūmentārius, a, um, adj., *pertaining to corn;* **res frumentaria**, *corn supply.*

frūmentātio, ōnis, f., *foraging; obtaining corn.*

frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, *to forage.*

frūmentum, i, n., *corn, grain.*

fruor, frui, fruĭtus, or fructus sum, *enjoy,* gov's abl.

frustrā, adv., *in vain, without effect.*

fŭga, ae, f., *flight, rout, running away.*

fŭgio, ĕre, fūgi, fŭgitum, *to flee.*

fŭgĭtīvus, a, um, adj., *fleeing;* as subst., *a runaway, deserter.*

fŭgo, are, avi, atum, *put to flight, rout.*

fūmo, are, avi, atum, *smoke.*

fūmus, i, m., *smoke.*

funda, ae, f., *a sling.*

fungor, fungi, functus sum, *perform* a duty, *discharge;* gov's abl.

fūnis, is, m., *a rope.*

fūnebris, e, adj., *pertaining to a funeral; funeral* (adj.).

fūnus, ĕris, n., *burial, funeral rites.*

fŭror, ōris, m., *fury, rage, madness.*

furtum, i, n., *theft.* [fur.]

fūsĭlis, e, adj. [fundo.] strictly *molten, fluid, liquid;* at Bk. v, 43, **fusilis argilla**, *softened clay.*

fŭtūrus, a, um, future part. of **sum.**

G.

galea, ae, f., *a helmet* (of leather.)

Gallĭcus, a, um, adj., *Gaulish, Gallic.*

gallīna, ae, f., *a hen.* [gallus.]

gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, semi depon., *rejoice.*

gāvīsus. See gaudeo.

gĕner, ĕri, m., *a son-in-law.*

gĕnerātim, adv., *by tribes.*

gens, tis, f., *a clan, nation.*

gĕnus, ĕris, n., *a class, sort.*

gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum, *to carry on:* ger. bellum, *to wage war:* res gestae, *what has happened, events, achievements.*

glădĭus, ĭi, m., *a sword.*

glans, dis, f., *an acorn; an acorn-shaped missile.*

glēba, ae, f., *a clod* (of earth.)

glōria, ae, f., *glory, renown, praise.*

grātĭa, ae, f., *favor; thanks, return, requital.*

grātŭlātĭo, ōnis, f., *rejoicing, congratulation.*

grātulor, ari, atus sum, *congratulate.*

grātus, a, um., adj., *acceptable, agreeable, pleasing.*

grăvis, e, adj., *heavy, severe.*

grăvĭtās, ātis, f., *weight, authority, gravity, importance.* [gravis.]

grăvĭter, -ius, issime, adv., *heavily; deeply, severely:* **graviter ferre**, *to be indignant at, take amiss.*

grăvo, are. avi, atum, *load heavily, weigh down*; passive, *feel displeasnre, hesitate, be unwilling.*

gŭbernātor, ōris, m., *a helmsman.* [guberno.]

gusto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to taste, eat.*

H.

hăbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to have: to deem, hold, consider:* orationem or contionem habēre, *to deliver a speech* or *harangue.*

haesĭto, are, avi, atum, *stick, stick fast, remain fixed* [haereo.]

hāmus, i, m., *hook.*

harpăgo, ōnis, m., *grappling-hook.*

haud, adv., *not.*

hērēdĭtas, ātis, f., *heirship, inheritance.* [heres.]

hīberna, orum, n., *winter-quarters.*

hībernāculum, i, n., *winter abode.*

hĭc, haec, hōc, demonstr., pron., *this.*

hīc, adv., *here.*

hĭĕmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pass the winter; to winter.* [hiems.]

hĭems, is, f., *winter.*

hinc, adv., *hence.*

hŏdĭē, adv., *to-day* [hoc-die.]

hŏmo, ĭnis, comm., *a human being, a man.*

hŏnestus, a, um, adj., *distinguished, honorable, noble.* [honor.]

hŏnor, ōris, m., *honor, esteem.*

honōrifĭcus, a, um, *honor-producing, honorable, full of honor* [facis.]

hōra, ae, f., *an hour.*

horreo, ēre, horrui, no supine, *shudder, shudder at, dread.*

horrĭdus, a, um, adj., *rough, uncouth, savage.*

hortor, āri, ātus, *to exhort, urge.*

hospes, ĭtis, m., *a guest.*

hospĭtĭum, ĭi, n., *hospitality*; at V. 27, it means, *hospitable relations.*

hostis, is, comm., *an enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither;* **accedit huc**, *to this is added.*

huiusmŏdi, *of this sort.*

hūmānus, a, um, adj., *refined, civilized.* [homo.]

hŭmerus, i. m., *shoulder.*

hŭmĭlis, e, adj., *lowly; insignificant.* [humus.]

hŭmĭlĭtās, ātis, f., *lowliness, weakness.*

I.

N.B.—No distinction is made between I and J.

iaceo, ēre, iacui, no supine, *lie down, lie*; **iacens**, as subst., *one fallen.*

iăcio, ĕre, iēci, iactum, *to cast, hurl, fling, throw.*

iacto, are, avi, atum, *fling, toss about; discuss.*

iactūra, ae, f. *(a throwing), expense, cost.*

iăcŭlum, i, n., *a dart, javelin.* [iacio.]

iam, adv., *now, already.*

ĭbi, adv., *in that place, there.* [is.]

ictus, ūs, m., *a blow, stab, stroke* [īco.]

idcirco, adv., *for that reason.*

ĭdentĭdem, adv., *from time to time, repeatedly, again and again,* [idem, doubled.]

īdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, pron., *the same.*

ĭdōnĕus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable, adapted.*

Idūs, uum, f. pl., *the Ides,* the 13th day of the month, except in March, May, July, October, when it was the 15th.

ignis, is, m., *fire.*

ignōbĭlis, e, adj., *unknown to fame, obscure.*

ĭgnōmĭnia, ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be ignorant of.* [in gnarus.]

īgnōsco, ĕre, gnōvi, gnōtum, *(not to know), to pardon, overlook, forgive*

ĭgnotus, a, um, pf. part. of **ignosco**; as adj., *unknown.*

illatus, v. inlatus.

ille, a, ud, pron. dem., *that; he, she, it.*

illic, adv., *there, in that place.*

illigatus, v. inligatus.

illigo, v. inligo.

illo, adv., *thither, to that place; to that end.*

illustris, v. inlustris.

imbēcillitās, ātis, *weakness, feebleness.*

imber, imbris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*

ĭmĭtor, ari, ātus sum, *to imitate.*

immānis, e, adj., *enormous, huge.*

immĭnĕo, ēre, no perf. or sup., *to impend, be close at hand.*

immitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send against, cast, hurl, let loose.* [inmitto.]

immŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to offer up, sacrifice.* [in, mola.]

immortālis, e, adj., *undying, immortal.* [in, mortalis, mors.]

immūnis, ĕ, adj., *free from taxes; free from public duty; exempt.*

immūnĭtās, ātis, f., *exemption* or *freedom from public charges and services.*

imparātus, a, um, adj., *unprepared.*

impĕdīmentum, i, n., *a hindrance;* plur., **impedimenta**, orum, *the baggage (train) of an army.* [impedio.]

impĕdĭo, ire, īvi or ĭi, ītum, *to entangle, hamper, hinder.* [in, pes.]

impĕdītus, a, um, part. impedio.

impello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive on, urge; impel; instigate.*

impendeo, ēre, no pf. or supine, *hang over, overhang.*

impensus, a, um, *dear* (in price). [impendo.]

impĕrātor, ōris, m., *a commander* (in chief).

impĕrātum, i, n, *that which is commanded; a command, order.* [impero.]

imperfectus, a, um, adj., *unfinished, incomplete.*

impĕrītus, a, um, adj., *inexperienced, ignorant.*

impĕrĭum, ĭi, n., *a command, order; authority, control, power.*

impĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to command, order.*

impetro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to obtain a wish.*

impĕtus, ūs, m., *assault, attack, onset.*

impĭus, a, um, adj., *without reverence for the gods, one's country,* or *parents; impious, wicked.* [in-pius.]

implĭco, are, avi, or ui, ātum or ĭtum, *enfold, entangle, involve.* [plĭco, fold.]

implōro, are, avi, atum, *to entreat, appeal to.*

impōno, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, *place on; impose; mount.*

importo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey, import.*

importatus, *V.* importo.

imprīmīs, adv., *especially, particularly.* [in, primus.]

imprŏbus, a, um, *bad, shameless.*

imprōvīsum, i, n., *that which is unforeseen:* usu. in abl. w. de, adverbially, **de improviso** *suddenly, unexpectedly.* [in, pro, video.]

imprōvīsus, a, um, adj., *unforeseen.*

imprūdens, entis, adj., *unwitting, taken unawares.*

imprūdentia, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of foresight.*

impūbes, ĕris, adj., *unmarried, under age.*

impugno, are, avi, atum, *fight against, attack, assail, charge.*

impulsus, a, um, part., impello.

impūne, adv., *without punishment.*

impūnĭtās, ātis, *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

īmus, superl. of **inferus.**

impulsus, ūs, m., *prompting, instigation.* [impello.]

ĭn, prep. w. acc., *into, against, to, towards;* w. abl., *in, on, upon, among, within.*

ĭnānis, e, adj., *empty, void.*

incautē, adv., *carelessly.*

incautus, a, um, adj., *heedless, off one's guard.* [caveo.]

incēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *advance, proceed; come upon, seize upon* (as of grief, etc.)

incendĭum, ĭi, n., *a fire, camp-fire.*

incendo, ĕre, cendi, censum, *set on fire, burn; rouse, fire, excite.* [candeo, shine.]

inceptus. See **incipio.**

incertus, a, um, adj., *doubtful:* **iter** incertum, *taken at hazard* or *at a venture.*

incĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, cāsum, *to happen, occur.* [in, cado.]

incīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *cut into, lop off.* [caedo, cut.]

incĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to begin.*

incīsus. See **incīdo.**

incĭto, are, avi, atum, *rouse, urge, incite.*

incōgnĭtus, a, um, *unknown.* [cognosco.]

incrĕpĭto, are, avi, atum, *reproach, blame, chide, taunt.*

incumbo, ĕre, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum, (*to lie or lean upon*), *devote one's self to, attend to.*

incursus, ūs, *an assault, attack.*

in-cŏlo, ĕre, cŏlŭi, cultum, *to inhabit, dwell.*

incŏlŭmis, e, adj., *safe, unharmed.*

ĭncommŏdē, adv., *disastrously, unfortunately.*

incommŏdum, i, n., *disadvantage, disaster, misfortune.*

incrēdĭbĭlis, e, adj., *not to be believed, marvellous.* [in, credo.]

incursĭo, ōnis, f., *invasion, attack.* [incurro.]

inde, adv., *from that place, thence.*

indĭcĭum, i, n., *secret information.*

in-dīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to appoint, proclaim.*

indictus, perf. part. of **indīco.**

indictus, a, um, adj., *unsaid*—**causā indictā**, *without a hearing.* [in, not, dico.]

indignē, adv., *unworthily, shamefully.*

indignitās, ātis, f., *unworthiness, unbecoming conduct; disgrace, indignity, insult.*

indignor, ari, atus sum, *think unworthy, be indignant at.*

indignus, a, um, adj., *unworthy.*

indīligens, ntis, adj., *careless, heedless.*

indīligenter, adv., *carelessly.*

indīligentia, ae, f., *carelessness.*

indūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead on or into, induce, influence*; *cover.*

indulgeo, ēre, dulsi, dultum, *favor, indulge, be kind to.*

indŭo, ŭĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *put on*—**se induere**, *to get tangled.*

industriē, adv., *industriously, diligently.*

indūtiae, arum, pl. f., *a truce, armistice.*

ĭn-ĕo, īre, īvi, or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go into, enter upon.*

inermis, e, adj., *unarmed.* [in, arma.]

iners, ertis, adj., *indolent, idle, unmanly.* [in, not; ars.]

infāmĭa, ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

infans, ntis, c., *one who does not speak*; *an infant, child.* [in, not; fari, speak.]

infectus, a, um, adj., *unaccomplished.* [facio.]

infĕrĭor, us, comp. adj., *lower.* [inferus, infra.]

infĕro, -ferre, intŭli, inlātum or illātum, *to bring on* or *against*: bellum, *to make, to wage, carry on against*: vulnus, *to inflict*: in ignem, *to throw* (anything) *into.*

inferus, a, um, adj., *below, underneath*; compar. **inferior**, *lower*; superl. **infĭmus**, or **īmus**, *lowest*; *lowest part of.*

infestus, a, um, adj., *hostile.*

in-fĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to dye, stain.*

infĭdēlis, e, adj., *unfaithful.*

infīgo, ĕre, fixi, fixum, *fasten in.*

infĭmus. See **inferus**.

infīnītus, a, um, adj., *endless, unlimited.* [in, finis.]

infīrmĭtās, ātis, f., *weakness, fickleness.*

in-firmus, a, um, adj., *weak.*

inflecto, ĕre, flexi, flexum, *to bend.*

influo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *to flow into.*

infŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *bury, dig in.*

infrā, prep. w. acc., *below, under.*

ingens, entis, adj., *large, vast, immense.*

ingrātus, a, um, adj., *displeasing.* [in, gratus.]

ingrĕdĭor, grĕdi, gressus, *to advance, enter on.*

inicio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw in, infuse*; *lay on.* [in, iacio.]

iniectus. See **inicio**.

ĭnĭmīcĭtĭa, ae, f., *enmity, hostility.*

ĭnĭmīcus, a, um, adj., *unfriendly*; subst., **inimicus**, i, m., *an enemy, foe.* [in, amicus.]

inīquitās, ātis, *unevenness*; *inequality*; *unfairness*; *bad character*; *unfavorable position.*

ĭnīquus, a, um, adj., *not level*: locus, *disadvantageous, unfavorable.* [in, aequus.]

ĭnĭtĭum, ĭi, n., *a beginning.* [in, eo.]

ĭnĭtus, a, um, part. ineo.

iniungo, ĕre, iunxi, iunctum, *fix, fasten upon.*

iniūrĭa, ae, f., *injury, wrong, oppression.* [in, ius.]

in-iussu, m., (only in abl.), *without the command.*

inlātus, (ill-), a, um, part. infero.

inlĭgātus, (ill-), a, um, part. inlĭgo.

in-lĭgo, (ill-), āre, avi, atum, *to bind on, tie on.*

inlustris, (ill-), e, adj., *distinguished, high* (of social rank). [in, lustro.]

innascor, nasci, nātus sum, *be born in*; *spring up.*

innītor, nīti, nīsus or nixus sum, *lean on.* [nitor.]

innixus. See innitor.

in-nŏcens, ntis, adj., *harmless, guiltless, innocent.*

innocentia, ae, f., *innocence, blamelessness, integrity.*

ĭnŏpĭa, ae, f., *want, lack, poverty.*

inŏpīnans, ntis, adj., *not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.*

inpĕtro, v. impetro.

inquit, v. defect., *says he.*

in-rumpo, (irr-), ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break, burst,* or *rush in, or into.*

inscĭens, entis, adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

inscientia, ae, f., *lack of knowledge, ignorance.*

inscius, a, um, adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

insĕquor, i, quūtus or cūtus, *to follow up, pursue.*

insero, ĕre, serui, sertum, *fasten into.* [sero, join.]

insĭdĭae, ārum, f., plur., *an ambuscade, ambush.* [insideo.]

insĭdĭor, āri, ātus sum, *to lay an ambush.*

insignē, is, n., *sign, badge, distinction.*

insignis, e, adj., *noted, remarkable.*

īnsĭlio, ire, silui, sultum, *leap upon.* [salio.]

insĭmŭlo, are, avi, atum, *charge, accuse.*

insinuo, are, avi, atum, *worm one's way into, thrust one's self into, penetrate.*

insisto, ĕre, stĭti no sup., with in. and acc., *to devote oneself to; press forward.*

insŏlenter, adv., *haughtily, insolently.*

inspecto, are, avi, atum, *look on.*

instābilis, e, adj., *unsteady.* [in, not; sto.]

instans, pres. part. of insto, *pressing, imminent.*

instar, n, indecl., *image of; like unto,* gov's gen.

instīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to urge on, incite.*

instĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to set up, build: to fabricate, fashion, make:* sermonem, *to arrange, keep up.*

instĭtūtum, i, n., *mode* or *manner of life, custom, habits.*

in-sto, stāre, stĭti, stātum, *to press forward.*

instructus. See instruo.

instrūmentum, i, n., *furniture.* [in-struo.]

instrŭo, ĕre, struxi, structum, *to build, construct; to draw up in array; fit out, equip.*

insuēfactus, a, um, adj., *unaccustomed.*

insuētus, a, um., adj., *unaccustomed.*

insŭla, ae, f., *an island.*

insŭper, adv., *above, overhead, on top.*

intĕger, gra, grum, adj., *untouched, whole, new; unimpaired, undiminished.*

intĕgo, ĕre, texi, tectum, *cover, cover over.*

intellĕgo, ĕre, exi, ectum, *to understand, perceive: to be quite aware.*

intendo, ĕre, tendi, tentum, *strive.*

intentus, a, um, *attentive, eager, bent on, intent.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, during.*

inter-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come between, intervene; to interfere, occur, arise.*

inter-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch* or *seize on the way, to intercept.* [inter, capio.]

interclūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, *shut off, cut off, block up, hinder.*

inter-dīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to forbid, prohibit, interdict.*

interdiu, adv., *in the day time, by day.*

interdum, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile; sometimes.*

intĕrĕā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intĕr-ĕo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, *to die, perish.*

inter-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to kill, slay.*

interĭcio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *throw between, put between*; in pass. of time, *elapse, intervene.* [iacio.]

intĕrim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.* [inter, im (old acc. of is.)]

intĕrior, ōris, adj., comp. from intra, *inner, interior.*

intĕrĭtus, ūs, m., *destruction, death.* [intereo.]

intermitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to put* or *send between; to leave off, to allow to pass* or *elapse, to pause, to stop.*

internĭcio (-necio), ōnis, f., *slaughter*; *utter destruction, annihilation.* [inter, neco, kill.]

interpello, are, avi, atum, *interrupt, disturb, hinder.*

inter-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put* or *set between*: fidem, *to pledge one's word.*

inter-pres, ĕtis, comm., *an interpreter.*

interprĕtor, ari, atus sum, *to explain, expound.*

interrŏgo, are, avi, atum, *ask, question.*

interrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break down, break up.*

interscindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *cut down, destroy.*

inter-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be among, to take part in*; also as impersonal verb, interest, *to be of importance, to concern.*

intervallum, i, n., *interval.* [inter, vallum.]

intervĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come up, arrive.*

interventus, ūs, *coming up*; *arrival on the scene, intervention.*

intexo, ĕre, ui, textum, *weave in, interlace.*

intŏleranter, adv., *excessively, earnestly, vehemently.*

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*

intrītus, a, um, adj., *unworn, unfatigued.* [tero.]

intro, are, avi, atum, *enter, go in.*

intrōdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead into.*

intro-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go into, to enter.*

intrŏĭtus, ūs, m., *entrance.* [introeo.]

intrō-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send* or *let in.*

introrsus, adv., *towards the interior*; *inwards.* [intro, versus.]

intrō-rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break in, enter by force.*

intueor, tuēri, tuĭtus sum, *look upon, gaze upon.*

intŭli, v. infero.

intus, adv., *on the inside, within.*

inūsitātus, a, um, adj., *strange, unfamiliar, novel.*

inūtilis, e, adj., *useless; unserviceable, disadvantageous.*

invĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, *to discover, find.*

inventor, ōris, m., *an author, discoverer.*

in-vĕtĕrasco, rascere, rāvi, incep., *to grow old, to become established* or *fixed.*

invictus, a, um, *unconquerable, invincible.*

invĭdeo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *envy, be jealous of.*

invĭdia, ae, f., *envy.*

inviŏlātus, a. um, adj., *sacred, inviolable.*

invītātus, a, um, part. invito.

invīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to invite, allure.*

invītus, a, um, adj., *unwilling.*

ipse, a, um, pron. demonstr., *self; himself, herself, itself;* for emphasis, *very, just.*

īrācundĭa, ae, f., *passion, anger.*

īrācundus, a, um, *passionate, prone to anger.*

irrīdeo, ēre, rīsi, rīsum, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*

irrīdĭcŭlē, adv., *without wit;* **non irridicule**, *wittily.*

irrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break into, rush into.*

irruptio, ōnis, f., *a breaking into, attack, sortie, dash.*

is, ĕă, id, pron. demonstr., *that; he, she, it.*

iste, a, ud, pron., demonst., *that of yours, that near you, that which you are interested in,* &c.

ĭta, adv., *in this manner, so, thus.*

ĭtăque, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

ĭtem, adv., *also, likewise.*

ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, n, *journey, march; road, path, way.* [supine stem it- of eo, to go.]

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

iūba, ae, f., *mane.*

iŭbĕo, ēre, iussi, iussum, *to bid, command, order.*

iūdĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *judgment, decision, opinion.* [iudex.]

iūdĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to decide, judge.* [iudex.]

iŭgum, i, n., *yoke, ridge.*

iūmentum, i, n., *baggage animal, beast of burden.* [iugum.]

iunctura, ae, f., *a joining, joint space between; span.*

iunctus. See **iungo**.

iungo, ĕre, iunxi, iunctum, *join, unite, connect.*

iūnior. See iuvenis.

iūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to swear.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right* (i. e., *legal right* what one is entitled to); *rightful authority.*

iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiurandi, n., *an oath.* [ius, iuro.]

iussus, a, um, part. iubeo.

iustĭtĭa, ae, f, *justice.*

iustus, a, um, adj., *complete, regular, due.*

iŭvenis, e, adj., *young;* comp. **iunior**, superl., **minimus natu.**

iŭventūs, ūtis, f., collective noun, *the youth, the young persons of a community.*

iŭvo, āre, iūvi, iūtum, *to help.*

iuxtā, adv., *near, next.*

K.

Kal.=Kalendae.

Kalendae, arum, f., pl., the Calends or Kalends, the Roman name for the first day of the month. **Kalendae Apriles**, the April Kalends, or Kalends of April, April 1st.

L.

L.=Lucius.

lābor, lābi, lapsus, *to slip, tumble down;* hence, *to slip* or *fall away from* a thing, *to be disappointed.*

lăbor, ōris, m., *labor, toil.*

lăbōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to labor, to be in difficulties, to be hard pressed.*

labrum, i, n., *a lip; rim, brim.*

lac, lactis, n., *milk.*

lăcesso, ĕre, essīvi, essītum, *to attack, provoke.*

lacrīma, ae, f., *a tear.*

lacrimo, are, avi, atum, *weep.*

lăcus, ūs, m., *a lake.*

laedo, ĕre, laesi, laesum, *hurt, violate.*

laetātĭo, ōnis, f., *exultation, rejoicing.* [laetor.]

laetĭtĭa, ae, f., *joyfulness, rejoicing.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, joyous, joyful.*

languidē, adv., *feebly.*

languor, ōris, m., *feebleness, weariness.* [langueo.]

lăpis, ĭdis, m., *a stone.*

lapsus, a, um, part. lābor.

laqueus, i, m., *noose.*

largĭor, īri, ītus, *to bestow, impart, yield.* [largus.]

largĭter, adv., *greatly, much.* **largiter posse**, *to have great influence.*

largītio, ōnis, f., *liberality, bribery.*

lassitūdo, ĭnis, f., *faintness, weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē, adv., *widely, broadly, extensively*, comp. **latius**, sup. **latissime**.

lătēbra, ae, f., *hiding-place, covert.*

lăteo, lătēre, lătui, no supine, *lie hid, be unnoticed.*

lātissĭme, sup. adv. [latus.]

lātĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *breadth, width.* [lātus.]

lātius, compar. of **lātē**.

latro, ōnis, *robber, freebooter.*

latrōcĭnĭum, ii, n., *freebooting, robbery, highway-robbery:* in plur., *freebooting expeditions, forays.* [latrocinor, latro.]

lătus, ĕris, n., *a side.*

lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad.*

laudo, are, avi, atum, *praise.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, credit.*

lăvo, are, lāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum, *wash;* pass. used reflexively, *bathe.*

laxo, are, avi, atum, *spread out, open out, extend.*

lēgātĭo, ōnis, f., *an embassy.* [lēgo, *to send with a commission, to depute.*]

lēgātus, i, m., *a lieutenant-general; an envoy, ambassador, deputy.* [lēgo.]

lĕgĭo, ōnis, f., *a legion.* [lĕgo, *to choose.*]

lĕgionārius, a, um, adj., *legionary (soldier).*

lēnis, e, adj., *gentle, slack.*

lēnĭtās, ātis, f., *smoothness, gentleness.*

lēnĭter, adv., *gently, slightly, slowly.*

lēnĭus, adv., comp. of lēnĭter, *more feebly.*

lĕpus, ŏris, m., *a hare.*

lĕvis, e, adj., *light* (i.e. *not heavy*); hence, *light-minded, frivolous.*

lĕvĭtās, ātis, f., *lightness; fickleness.* [lĕvis.]

lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to lighten, ease, relieve.*

lex, lēgis, f., *a law.*

lĭbenter, adv., *freely, willingly, gladly.*

līber, era, erum, adj., *free.*

līberālitās, ātis, f., *liberality, generosity, kindness.*

līberāliter, adv., *graciously, courteously, kindly.*

lībĕrē, adv., *freely.*

lībĕri, ōrum, m., plur., *children.* [līber, *free.*]

lībĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make* or *set free; to free, release.* [līber.]

lībertās, ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*

lībrīlis, e, adj., *a pound in weight.* [lībra, a pound, a balance.]

lĭcentia, ae, f., *lawlessness, presumption.*

lĭceor, ēri, licitus sum, *bid.*

lĭcet, ēre, lĭcŭit, and lĭcĭtum est, impers. v. *it is lawful; it is allowed, permitted.*

lignātĭo, ōnis, f., *felling* or *getting wood.* [lignum.]

lignātor, ōris, m., *a woodcutter, one sent to get wood.*

līlium, i, n., *lily.*

līnea, ae, f., *line.* [linum, thread.]

lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language.*

lingula, ae, *a tongue of land, point.* [lingua.]

linter, tris, f., *boat, skiff.*

līnum, i, n, *flax.*

līs, lītis, f., *dispute, lawsuit:* **litem aestimare**, *to settle the matter in dispute.*

littera, ae, f., 1. singular, a *letter* of the alphabet; 2. plur., *an epistle, letter, dispatch*; *writing, literature.*

lītus, ŏris, n., *shore* of the sea, *strand, beach.*

lŏcus, i, m. (pl. loca, orum, n.), *place, position, region; chance, opportunity.*

lŏcūtus. See lŏquor.

longē, -ius, -issime, adv., *far.* [longus.]

longinquus, a, um, adj., *distant; long, prolonged.* [longus.]

longĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *length.* [longus.]

longŭrius. i, m., *a long pole.*

longus, a, um, adj., *long.*

lŏquor, loqui, loquūtus or locūtus sum, *to speak, talk, say.*

lōrīca, ae, f. (*a cuirass made of leather thongs:* hence) *a breastwork, mantlet, parapet.* [lorum, *a thong.*]

Lūna, ae, f., *the moon, the moon-goddess.*

lux, lūcis, f., *light:* primâ luce, *at day break.*

luxŭria, ae, f., *luxury.*

M.

M. = Marcus.

M'. = Manius.

māceria, ae, f., *wall, enclosure.*

māchinātio. ōnis, f., *a contrivance, machine.* [māchina.]

maestus, a, um, adj., *sad, sorrowful.*

măgis, adv., *more*, comp. of **magnŏpere**; superl. **maximē**.

măgistrātus, ūs, m., *a magistrate.*

magnĭfĭcus, a, um, adj., *grand, splendid, magnificent.* [magnus, facio.]

magnĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *greatness; great amount:* venti, *force, violence.* [magnus.]

magnŏpĕrē, = **magno opere**, adv., *greatly, earnestly, strongly.*

magnus, a, um, adj., (comp. **māior**, us; sup. **maxĭmus**, a, um), *great:* ĭtinera, *forced marches.*

maiestās, ātis, f., *greatness, dignity.*

māiōres, um, m, (*v.* magnus), plur. subst., *ancestors, forefathers.*

mălăcia, ae, f., *a calm, stillness.*

mălĕficium, i, n, *an evil deed, crime, mischief, hurt.*

mālo, malle, mālui, *I prefer, I would rather.*

mălus, a, um, adj., *bad, evil.*

mālus, i, m., *upright pole; mast* of a ship.

mandātum, i, n., *order, injunction, instruction.*

mando, āre, āvi, ātum, *to commit* (to any one's charge), *to consign, entrust, enjoin upon*; litteris, *to commit to writing.*

māne, adv., *in the morning, early.*

mănĕo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to bide, to stay, remain.*

manĭpulāris, e, *belonging to a maniple* or *company.*

manipŭlus, i, m., *a maniple, company of soldiers.* See Introduction.

mansŭēfăcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to tame.* [mansuetus (part. of mansuesco = manus, suesco, *to accustom to be handled*), facio.]

mansuētudo, inis, f., *gentleness, mercy, kindness, compassion.*

mănus, ūs. f., *a hand*; *a band, body, force* (of soldiers).

mărĕ, is, n., *the sea.*

maris, v. mas.

mărĭtŭmus (also **marĭtĭmus**), a, um., adj., *maritime, of the sea.*

mās, măris, adj., *male, of the male sex*; subst., *a male* (opp. femina).

mătăra, ae, f., *a Gaulish javelin, pike.*

māter, tris, f., *mother*; **matres familiae**, *matrons.*

mātĕrĭa, ae, f., *timber.*

mātĕrior, iari, iatus sum, *procure timber.* [materia.]

mătrimōnium, i, n., *marriage, wedlock.*

mātūrē, adj., *early, soon.*

mātūresco, ĕre, rui, no sup., *to grow ripe.*

mātūro, are, avi, atum, *make haste, hasten.*

mātūrus, a, um, *ripe, early.*

maxĭmē, adv., *most of all, chiefly, especially.* [maximus, magnus.]

maximus, a, um, superl of **magnus.**

mĕdĕor, ēri, *to cure, heal, remedy.*

mĕdĭŏcris, e, adj., *middling, moderate.* [medius.]

mediōcrĭter, adv., *moderately.*

mĕdĭterrāneus, a, um, adj., *inland.*

mĕdĭus, a, um, adj., *mid, middle.*

mĕlĭor, ius, adj., *better.* [comp. of bonus.]

membrum, i. n., *a limb, member of the body.*

mĕmĭnī, isse, defective verb (used only in perf. tenses), *remember.*

mĕmŏrĭa, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*

mendācium, i, n., *falsehood, lie.*

mens, mentis, f., *the mind.*

mensis, is, m., *a month.*

mensūra, ae, f., *measure, extent.* [metior.]

mentio, ōnis, f., *mention.*

mercātŏr, ōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

mercātūra, ae, f., *commerce, trade.* [mercor, merx.]

mercēs, ēdis, f., *pay, hire, reward.*

mĕreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, also **mereor**, ēri, ĭtus sum, *merit, deserve, earn*; *serve.*

mĕrīdĭānus, a, um, adj., *mid-day.*

merīdiēs, ei, m., *mid-day*; *the south.*

mĕrĭtum, i, n., *good deed, service* (to any one). [mereo.]

-met, enclitic, suffix, used to emphasize pronouns, *e.g.*, **nosmet**, *ourselves.*

mētior, iri, mensus sum, *measure, measure out, distribute*; used passively, *be measured out*, I, 16, 23.

mĕto, ĕre, messui, messum, *reap, harvest.*

mĕtus, ūs, m., *fear.*

meus, a, um, poss. adj., *my, mine.*

mīle or **mille**, card. num. adj. (plur., as subst., **mīlĭa** or **millia**), *a thousand.*

mīles, ĭtis, m., *a soldier.*

mīlĭtāris, e, adj., *belonging to a soldier* or *soldiering*; gloria rei militaris, *military renown.* [miles.]

mīlĭtĭa, ae, f., *military service.* [miles.]

mĭnĭmē, superl. adv., *least.*

mĭnĭmus, a, um, adj., superl. of **parvus**, *least.*

mĭnor, us, adj., comp. of **parvus**, *less.*

mĭnŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to make smaller, lessen, diminish.*

mĭnus, adv., *less, the less.* [minor.]

mīror, āri, ātus, *to wonder, wonder at.*

mīrus, a, um, adj., *wonderful, strange, marvellous.*

mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., *wretched, miserable.*

mĭsĕrĭcordia, ae, f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

mĭseror, ari, atus sum, *lament, deplore.*

missus, a, um, pf. part. mitto.

missus, ūs, m., *a sending.* [mitto.]

mītissimē, adv., superl. of mite, *very gently, very kindly.*

mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send, throw.*

mōbĭlis, e, adj., *fickle, changeable.*

mōbĭlitās, ātis, f., *speed, rapid movement; fickleness.* [moveo.]

mōbĭliter, adv., *easily.*

mŏderor, ari, atus sum, *check, manage, regulate.*

mŏdestia, ae, f., *self-control; subordination.*

mŏdŏ, adv., *but, merely, only.* [originally abl. of modus=a *limit* or *measure.*]

mŏdus, i, m., *a measure; a way, manner.*

moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls* (of a city), *fortifications.*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass, mound, dam.*

mŏlestē, adv., *with trouble, annoyance.*

mōlīmentum, i, n., *great effort; exertion.* [mōlior.]

mŏlĭtus. See **molo.**

mollio, ire, ivi, ītum, *soften, make easy.*

mollis, e, adj., *gentle, gently sloping.*

mollitia, ae, and **mollitiēs**, ĕi, f., *softness, weakness, irresolution.*

mŏlo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, *grind.*

mōmentum, i, n., *influence, weight, importance, account.*

mŏnĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to advise, caution, warn, instruct.*

mons, montis, m., *a mountain.*

mŏra, ae, f., *delay.*

mŏrātus. See **mŏror.**

morbus, i, m., *a disease.*

mŏrior, mŏri (or moriri) mortuus sum, *die.*

mŏror, āri, ātus, *to delay, tarry, remain, stay; to hinder, hamper.* [mora.]

mors, tis, f., *death.*

mortŭus, a, um, pf. part., *dead.* [morior.]

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, fashion, manner, usage.*

mōtus, ūs, m., *motion, movement:* as political term, *commotion, disturbance.* [moveo.]

mŏvéo, ĕre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move;* castra movēre, *to break up camp.*

mulier, ĕris, f., *a woman.*

multĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *a crowd, a large number of people; the multitude,* i. e., *the people in general, the masses* or *populace.* [multus.]

multo, are, avi, atum, *punish, fine, deprive of.*

multō, adv., *much, by far:* used with comparatives. [multus.]

multum, adv., *much, greatly, considerably.* [multus.]

multus, a, um, adj., *much;* in plur., *many.*

mūlus, i, m., *a mule.*

mundus, i, m., *the world, the universe.* [mundus, *clean, neat.*]

mūnīmentum, i, n., *fortification defence.*

mūnĭo, īre, īvi, or ĭi, ītum, *to fortify; guard.*

mūnītĭo, ōnis, f., *a fortifying, fortification.* [munio.]

mūnītus, a, um, part. munio, *fortified,* as adj.: munitissima (castra), *very strongly protected.* [moenia.]

mūnus, ĕris, n., *a duty.*

mūrālis, e, adj., *belonging to a wall, mural.* [murus.]

mūrus, i, m., *a wall.*

musculus, i, *a little mouse*; in military sense, *a shed*; built strongly of wood, used in sieges as a shelter for soldiers engaged in assailing the walls of a town. [dimin. of mūs.]

mūtĭlus, a, um, adj., *maimed, wanting.*

N.

nactus, a, um, part. nanciscor.

nam, conj., *for.*

namque, conj., *for.*

nanciscor, i, nanctus or nactus, *to obtain, get.*

nascor, nasci, nātus, *to be born, to arise, to be produced.*

nātālis, e, adj., *belonging to birth, birth-.* [nascor.]

nātĭo, ōnis, f., *a race of people, a nation.* [nascor]

nātīvus, a, um, adj., *natural.*

nātūra, ae, f., *nature.* [nascor.]

nātus, a, um, part. nascor.

nātus, ūs, m., (used only in abl. sing., **natu**), *birth*; **maiores natu**, *elderly men.*

nauta, ae, m., *a sailor.* [navis.]

nāvālis, e., adj., *naval.* [navis.]

nāvĭcula, ae, f., *a small vessel, ship, boat.* [dimin. of navis.]

nāvĭgātio, ōnis, f., *a voyage, sailing.* [navis.]

nāvĭgĭum, i, n., *vessel, craft.* [navis.]

nāvĭgō, āre, āvi, ātum, *to sail, make a voyage.* [navis.]

nāvis, is, f., *a ship.*

nāvo, are, avi, atum, *perform busily, do with zeal*; **navare operam**, *act vigorously, do one's best.* [=(g)navo fr. gnavus, *busy.*]

nē, adv. and conj., *not, that not, lest*: **ne..quidem**, *not even.*

-nĕ, an enclitic particle, interrog.; **-ne..an**, *whether..or.*

nĕcessārio, adv., *perforce, of necessity.* [necesse.]

necessarius, a, um, adj., *urgent, necessary.*

necessarius, i, m., *an intimate friend, relative.*

nĕcesse, neut. adj., *unavoidable.*

nĕcessĭtās, ātis, f., *unavoidableness, necessity* (in the sense of *compulsion*).

necessitudo, inis, f., *friendship, intimacy.*

necne, conj., *or not.*

nĕco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill, put to death.*

necŭbi, conj., *in order that nowhere, lest anywhere.*

nĕfārius, a, um, adj., *wicked.* [nefas.]

nĕfās, indecl. noun, n., *a crime* against divine law, *impious deed.*

neglĕgo, ĕre, exi, ctum, *to disregard, make light of.* [nec, lĕgo=*not to gather up.*]

nĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to say no, to deny, to refuse.* [ne, aio.]

negōtior, iari, iatus sum, *transact* or *carry on business.*

nĕgōtĭum, ĭi, n., *a business, matter.* [nec, otium.]

nēmo, acc. nēmĭnem, (nullīus and nullo in best Lat., used for gen. and abl.), *no man, no one.* [ne, homo.]

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

nĕquĕ, or **nĕc**, conj., *and not, nor*: **neque..neque**, *neither..nor.*

nēquīquam, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

nervus, i, m., *a sinew.*

neu or **nē-ve**, conj., *and not, nor.*

neŭter, tra, trum, pron., *neither*; gen. -īus, dat. -i. [ne, uter.]

neve. See **neu**.

nex, nĕcis, f. (violent) *death.*

nĭhil, n. indecl., *nothing*. [ne, hilum =*not a bit*.]

nĭhĭlo, abl. of nihilum, n., *by nothing;* esp. as adv., nihilo minus, *none the less*.

nĭmĭs, adv., *too much, excessively*.

nĭmius, a, um, adj., *excessive, too great, too much*.

nĭ-sī, conj., *unless; except, save only*.

nītor, i, nīsus and nixus, *to strive, endeavor*.

nix, nĭvis, f., *snow*.

nōbĭlis, e, adj., *of high birth, noble;* plur. nobiles, *the nobles* [nosco.]

nōbĭlĭtās, ātis, f., *nobility*. [nobilis].

nŏcens, pres. part. of noceo, as adj., *guilty* ; as subs., *an evil doer*.

nŏcēo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to do hurt* or *harm to, injure*.

noctu, adv., *at night, by night*. [nox.]

nocturnus, a, um, adj., *belonging to night*, (going on) *by night*. [nox.]

nōdus, i, m., (*a knot ;* hence) *a joint* of an animal's body.

nōlo, nolle, nōlŭi, *to wish..not, to be unwilling*. [ne, volo.]

nōmen, ĭnis, n., *a name*.

nōmĭnātim, adv., *by name*. [nomen.]

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōnāginta, num. adj., *ninety*.

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnnĭhil, adv., *somewhat, to some extent*.

non-nullus, a, um (usually plur.), adj., *some, several*.

non-numquam, adv., *sometimes* (*not never*).

nōnus, a, um, num, adj., ord., *the ninth*. [=novenus, from novem.]

nōs, nostrum, plur. of ego, *we*.

nōsco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum, *to get, to know* a thing ; in perf. tenses, *to know*.

nōsmet, emphatic form of **nos**.

nōster, stra, strum, pron. adj. poss., *our, our own* ; plur. nostri, ōrum, m., *our men* (i.e., Romans). [nos.]

nōtĭtĭa, ae, f., *knowledge*. [nōtus.]

nōtus, a, um, part., *known*. [nosco.]

nŏvem, card. num. adj., *nine*.

nōvi, see nosco.

nŏvitās, ātis, f., *novelty, rareness, strangeness*.

nŏvus, a, um, adj., *new ;* sup. nŏvissĭmus, a, um, *the last, latest, hindermost*.

nox, noctis, f., *night*.

noxa, ae, f., *an injurious act*; *a crime, guilt*. [noceo.]

nūbo, ĕre, nupsi, nuptum, (of a woman) *to marry, veil one's self for*; gov's dat.

nūdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make naked* or *bare, to uncover* ; of military formation or position, *to leave uncovered* or *exposed* to the enemy. [nudus.]

nūdus, a, um, adj., *bare, naked, uncovered*.

nullus, a, um, adj., (gen. nullĭus, dat. nulli), *no, none*. [ne, ullus.]

num, interrog. particle, expecting answer "No."

nūmen, ĭnis, n., *the divine will, will* or *power* (of the gods).

nŭmĕrus, i, m., *a number* ; *estimation, position* : aliquo esse numero, *to be of any account*.

nummus, i, m., *money, a piece of money, coin*.

numquam. See nunquam.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nunquam, adv., *never*. [ne, unquam.]

nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce*.

nuntĭus, ĭi, m., *a messenger, message*.

nŭper, adv., *recently, lately*.

nusquam, adv., *nowhere*.

nūtus, ūs, m., *a nod, beckoning, making signs*.

O.

ŏb, prep. w. acc., *on account of*: ob eam causam, *for that reason, consequently, therefore.*

obaeratus, a, um, adj., *in debt*; as noun, *a debtor.*

obdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *lead towards, prolong.*

ŏb-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go to.*

ob-fero, (off) ob-ferre, ob-tŭli, oblātum, *to present, offer.*

ŏb-ĭcio, ĕre, ĭeci, iectum, *to put in the way, hinder*; part. **obiectus**, *lying opposite, facing.*

obiectus. See **obicio**,

obĭtus, ūs, m., *death.* [ob, eo.]

oblātus, v. ob-fero.

oblīquē, adv., *obliquely, slantingly.*

oblīquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique.*

oblīviscor, i, oblītus sum, *forget*; gov's gen.

obsĕcro, are, avi, atum, *beseech, implore, entreat.* [sacer.]

obsĕquentia, ae, f., *compliance.*

ob-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pay attention to, heed, observe, keep.*

obsĕs, ĭdis, m. or f., *a hostage.* [obsideo.]

obsessĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege*; *blockade.*

ob-sĭdĕo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit down at* or *before*; *to beset, besiege.* [ob, sedeo.]

obsĭdĭo, ōnis, f., *a siege, blockade.* [ob, sideo.]

obsigno, are, avi, atum, *seal.*

obsisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum, *resist, withstand.*

obstĭnāte, adv., *stubbornly.*

obstrictus, a, um, pf. part. of obstringo, *bound, under obligation.*

obstringo, ĕre, strinxi, strictum, *bind.*

obstrŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to build* or *wall up, barricade.*

obtempero, are, avi, atum, *submit to, yield to.*

obtestor, ari, atus sum, *implore, adjure.*

ob-tĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnŭi, tentum, *to have, hold, possess.* [ob, teneo.]

obvĕnio, ire, vēni, ventum, *meet, encounter*; *fall to the lot of.*

obviam, adv., *towards, in the way of*;—**obviam venire**, *to come to meet.*

occāsĭo, ōnis, f., *an opportunity.* [ob. cădo.]

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting*; occasus solis, *setting of the Sun.* [ob, cado.]

occĭdens (sol), entis, m., *the west.* [occido.]

occĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, cāsum, *to fall*; of the sun, *to set.* [ob, cădo.]

occīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *to kill, slay.* [ob. caedo.]

occultātio, ōnis, f., *concealment.*

occultē, adv., *secretly.*

occulto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to conceal, hide, secrete.* [occulo.]

occultus, a, um, part. occulo; as adj., *concealed, hidden, secret.*

occupatio, ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation.*

occŭpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take possession of, seize upon, engage in.* [ob. capio.]

oc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run up to, come up to, meet.*

octāvus, a, um, ord. num., *eighth.*

octingenti, ae, a, num, adj., *eight hundred.* [octo centum.]

octo, card. num., adj., *eight.*

octōdĕcim, indecl. card. num., *eighteen.*

octōni, ae, a, distrib. num., *eight apiece, eight at a time, in groups of eight.*

ŏculus, i, m., *eye.*

ōdi, ōdisse, defec. v. (used only in pf. tenses) *hate.*

ŏdium, i, n., *hatred.*

offendo, ere, fendi, fensum, *to injure.*

offensio, ōnis, f., *a hurting, wounding.*

offero, ferre, obtŭli, oblātum, *present, offer, expose.*

offĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *duty, service, allegiance.*

omitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to neglect, disregard, drop, omit.*

omnīno, adv., *altogether, at all.* [omnis.]

omnis, e, adj., *all, every.*

ŏnerārius, a, um, adj., *pertaining to loads; of burden.* [ŏnus.]

ŏnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to load, burden, freight.* [onus.]

ŏnus, ĕris, n., *a load, burden, cargo, weight.*

ŏpĕra, ae, f., *agency, means; aid, services.* operam dare, *take pains, exert one's self.* [opus.]

ŏpīnĭo, ōnis, f., *belief, expectation.* [opinor.]

ŏpis, (gen.; nom. not found), *power; aid, assistance;* opes, plur., *resources.*

oportet, ēre, uit, impers. v., *it behooves, it is necessary.*

oppidānus, a, um, adj., *belonging to a town;* as subst., *a townsman.*

oppidum, i, n., *town.*

oppōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, to *confront, place opposite.*

opportūnē, adv., *seasonably, conveniently.*

opportūnitās, ātis, f., *opportunity, fitness.*

opportūnus, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable.* [ob, portus=*at* or *before the harbour.*]

opprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to crush, overwhelm, oppress; to fall upon, take by surprise.* [ob, prĕmo.]

oppugnātĭo, ōnis, f., *an attack, assault.* [oppugno.]

oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to attack, assault, storm.* [ob, pugno.]

optatus, a, um, pf. part. of opto, as adj., *desired, agreeable.*

optimē, adv., superl. of bene, *best, in the best manner.*

ŏpus, ĕris, n., *work; work of fortification, "defences";* opus est, *there is a necessity, it is needful.*

ōra, ae, f., *coast, shore.*

ōrātĭo, ōnis, f., *a speech, harangue.* [ora.]

ōrātor, ōris, m., *envoy, ambassador*

orbis, is, m., *a circle, ring.*

ordo, ĭnis, m., *a line, rank of soldiers,* used by Caesar=centuria, *century, company.*

ŏriens, entis, (pres. part. of orior), as adj., *rising;* as subst. oriens (sol), *the rising sun,* i.e., *the east.*

ŏrior, īri, ortus, *to arise.*

ornāmentum, i, n., *decoration, adornment, honor.*

ornātus, a, um, pf. part. of orno, *equipped;* ornatissimus, *thoroughly equipped.*

orno, are, avi, atum, *adorn, equip, furnish.*

ōro, are, avi, atum, *to beg, beseech, entreat, implore.*

ortus, ūs, m., *a rising.*

ortus, a, um, part. of orior.

ōs, ōris, n., *the mouth.*

ostendo, ĕre, di, sum and tum, *to show;* se, *make one's appearance.*

ostentatio, ōnis, f., *display, show.*

ostento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to display, show off, boast of, vaunt.* [ostendo.]

ōtium, i, n., *rest, quiet, peace.*

ōvum, i, n., *egg.*

P.

P.=Publius.

pābulatio, ōnis, f., *foraging, act of getting fodder.*

pābŭlātor, ōris, m., *a forager.* [pabulor.]

pābulor, ari, atus sum, *to forage, seek fodder.* [pabulum.]

pābulum, i, n., *forage, fodder.*

pācātus, a, um, (part. of paco, *to make peaceful* [pax]), as adj., *peaceful.*

pāco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to quiet, reduce to state of peace.*

pactum, i, n., *bargain, agreement.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, ēre, uit, impers. v., *it repents.*—**me paenitet**, *I repent, I am sorry.*

pāgus, i, m, *a canton, district, village* (hence our word *pagan*).

pālam, adv., *openly, undisguisedly.*

palma, ae, f., *the palm of the hand, the blade of an oar.*

pălūs, ūdis, f., *a marsh, morass, swamp.*

palūster, tris, tre, adj., *marshy, swampy.* [palus.]

pando, ĕre, pandi, pansum or passum, *stretch, stretch out*; *open, spread out.*

pār, păris, adj., *equal.*

părātus, a, um, pf. part. of paro; as adj., *ready, prepared, equipped.*

parcē, adv., *sparingly.* [parco.]

parco, ĕre, pĕperci, parsum, *to spare, have mercy on.*

părens, entis, m. and f., *a parent.* [pario.]

parento, are, avi, atum, (literally, *to make a vow or offering in memory of deceased parents*), hence, *to revenge the death of any one.*

părĕo, ēre, ŭi, pārĭtum, *to obey, submit to.*

părĭo, ĕre, pĕpĕri, partum, *to bring forth* (hence), *to produce, bring about, secure.*

păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get* or *make ready, prepare.*

pars, partis, f., *a part, portion*: in utramque partem, *on both sides, either way, upon either view of the case.*

partim, adv., *in part, partly.* [pars.]

partior, partiri, partītus sum, *divide*; pf. part. used in passive sense.

partus, a, um, part. pario.

părum, adv., *too little, not enough.*

parvŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., *little, petty, trifling*; of age, *little, young.* [parvus.]

parvus, a, um, adj., *small*; compar. **mĭnor**, superl. **minimus.**

passim, adv., *everywhere, in all directions.*

passus, ūs, m., *a step, pace*; as a measure of length, about five of our feet, *i.e.*, a double pace: mille passūs, *a* (Roman) *mile*=about 1,618 yards; *V.* note, B. v., chap. 2.

patēfăcio, făcere, fēci, factum, *to open*; pass. **patefio, fieri, factus.**

patens, entis, adj., *open.*

pătĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to lie open*; *to stretch, extend.*

păter, tris, m., *a father.*

păterfămilĭae (or familias), m., *the master of a household, head of a family.*

pătĭentĭa, ae, f., *endurance.* [patior.]

pătĭor, i., passus, *to suffer, allow.*

patrius, a, um, adj., *ancestral, of one's forefathers.*

patrōnus, i, m., *protector, patron.*

patruus, i, m., *a father's brother*; *uncle.*

paucĭtās, ātis, f., *fewness, scarcity.* [paucus.]

paucus, a, um, adj., *few*, *little* (very rare in sing.); as subst., **pauci**, ōrum, m., *few*, *a few*.

paulātim, adv., *little by little*, *by degrees*, *gradually*. [paulum.]

paulisper, adv., *for a little while*. [paulum.]

paulo, adv. (with comparatives), *by a little*, *a little*, *somewhat*.

paulŭlum, adv., *a little*, *gradually*.

paulum, adv., *a little*, *somewhat*.

paulus, a, um, adj., *little*.

pax, pācis, f., *peace*. [The root of the word is seen in paciscor, pango, whence our *pact*, *compact*.]

pecco, are, avi, atum, *do wrong*.

pectus, ŏris, n., *the breast*.

pĕcūnĭa, ae, f., *money*. [pecus, because, in early times, *wealth* was *cattle*.]

pĕcus, ŏris, n., *a flock*, *herd*, *cattle*.

pedālis, e, adj., *measuring a foot*, *a foot thick*.

pedĕs, peditis, m., *foot-soldier*.

pedester, tris, tre, adj., *on foot*.—**pedestres copiae**, *infantry forces*; **pedestre proelium**, *a battle on land*.

pĕdĭtātus, ūs, m., *foot-soldiers*, *infantry*. [pedes, pes.]

peior, compar. of **mălus**, *worse*.

pellis, is, f., *a hide*, *skin*.

pello, pellĕre, pepŭli, pulsum, *drive off*, *defeat*, *conquer*.

pendo, ĕre, pĕpendi, pensum, *to weigh out*; (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal; hence) *to pay*.

pĕnĕs, prep., with acc., *in the power of*, *in possession of*.

pĕnĭtus, adv., *entirely*, *completely*.

per, prep, w. acc., *through*; showing the agent or means, *by*, *by means of*.

pĕr-ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to go through with*, *complete*, *finish*.

perangustus, a, um, adj., *very narrow*.

perceptus, v. percipio.

percĭpĭo, ĕre, cepi, ceptum, *to take note of*, *receive*, *learn*.

percontātĭo, ōnis, f., *question*, *inquiry*. [percontor.]

percurro, currĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run through*; *run along*.

percussus, a, um., part., percutio.

per-cŭtĭo, ĕre, cussi, cussum, *to pierce* or *strike through*. [quatio.]

per-disco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, *to learn thoroughly*, *get off by heart*.

perdĭtus, a, um, adj., *abandoned*, *desperate* (pf. part. of perdo).

per-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead through*; *to prolong*; *to bring* or *win* (any one) *over to one's side*; *carry over*.

pĕrendĭnus, a, um, adj., *after tomorrow*. [perendie.]

pĕrĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to perish*.

perĕquĭto, are, avi, atum, *ride about* or *around*, *ride through*. [per, equus.]

pĕr-exĭgŭus, a, um., adj., *very small*.

perfăcilis, e, adj., *very easy*.

per-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear* or *carry through*; *to bring*; *to bear*, *put up with*, *submit to*; in pass., of letters, news, etc., *to arrive*, *come to hand*.

per-fĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to accomplish*, *complete*, *finish*. [per-facio.]

perfĭdia, ae, f., *faithlessness*, *treachery*.

perfringo, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, *break through*. [frango.]

perfŭga, ae, m., *deserter*, *fugitive*.

perfugium, i, n., *a refuge*.

pergo, ĕre, per-rexi, per-rectum, *go on*, *advance*.

perĭclitor, ari, atus sum, *to endanger*.

perĭculōsus, a, um, *full of danger*, *dangerous*.

pĕrĭcŭlum, i, n., *danger*.

perĭtus, a, um, *skilled*, *practised experienced in*, *familiar with*.

perlātus, a, um, part. perfero.

perlectus, a, um, part. perlego.

per-lĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to read through.*

perlŭo, ĕre, lŭi, lūtum, *to wash*; in pass, *to bathe.*

permagnus, a, um, adj., *very great.*

per-mănĕo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to abide, continue, remain.*

permisceo, ēre, miscui, mixtum or mistum, *mix, mingle.*

per-mitto, mittĕre, mīsi, missum, *entrust, surrender, suffer, permit.*

permixtus, pf. part. of **permisceo.**

permōtus, pf. part. of **permoveo.**

per-mŏvĕo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move thoroughly*; of the mind, *to move deeply, influence, prevail on.*

permulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, *soothe, calm.*

pernĭciēs, ēi, f., *ruin, destruction.*

perpauci, ae, a, adj., *very few.*

perpendiculum, i, n., *plumb line.*

perpetior, peti, pessus sum, *bear, endure.* [patior.]

perpetuo, adv., *continually, constantly*; *always, forever.*

per-pĕtŭus, a, um, adj., *continuing throughout, unbroken*: **in perpetuum,** *for all time, for ever.* [per-peto.]

perquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi, quīsītum, *inquire about.* [quaero.]

per-rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break through.*

per-scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write in full, write a full account of.*

per-sĕquor, sĕqui, sĕcūtus, *to follow up, pursue.*

persĕvēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to abide steadfastly, persist.*

persolvo, ĕre, solvi, solūtum, *pay in full, pay.*

perspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look through*; *to see clearly, perceive.*

persto, stāre, stĭti, stātum, *stand firmly, persist.*

per-suādĕo, ēre, si, sum, *to persuade, prevail upon.*

perterreo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to terrify*; *thoroughly frighten.*

per-terrĭtus, a, um, part. of **perterreo,** *thoroughly frightened.*

pertĭnācĭa, ae, f., *obstinacy.* [pertinax, tenax, teneo.]

per-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to stretch out, reach, extend*; *to belong to, concern, affect.* [teneo.]

perturbatio, ōnis, f., *confusion.*

per-turbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to throw into confusion*; *to discompose, confound.*

pervăgor, ari, atus sum, *roam about.*

per-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni ventum, *to come to, arrive at.*

pēs, pĕdis, m., *a foot.*

pĕto, ĕre, īvi, and ĭi, ītum, *to seek; ask.*

phalanx, angis, f., *solid column, phalanx*; Greek acc. plur. **phalangas.**

pĭĕtās, ātis, f., *dutiful conduct* towards the gods, one's parents, country, etc. [pius.]

pīlum, i, n., *a javelin.*

pīlus, i, m., usually with primus, *the division of the army occupied by the triarii*; **primi pili centurio,** *a centurion of the triarii; chief centurion.*

pinna, ae, f., *a battlement.*

piscis, is, m., *fish.*

pix, pĭcis, f., *pitch.*

placeo, ēre, ui, itum, *please, be agreeable* or *welcome to*; **placet mihi,** *I am agreed, I resolve.*

plăcĭdē, adv., *calmly.*

plāco, are, avi, atum, *to reconcile, appease.*

plānē, adv., *clearly.*

plānities. ēi, f., *a plain*; *level ground.*

plānus, a, um, adj., *level, flat.*

plebs, plēbis and plēbes, ěi, f., *the common people*, "*the masses*" (opp. to the nobles).

plēnē, adv., *fully, completely.*

plēnus, a, um, adj., *full, complete.*

plērumque, adv., *for the most part, mostly.*

plērusque, răque, rumque, adj., (rare in sing.); plerīque, plur., *very many, the most part, the majority.*

plumbum, i. m., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrĭmum, adv., *most, very much:* ei debere, *to be very greatly indebted to, under very great obligations to.*

plūs, plūris (in plur., plūres, plūra,) *more*, and plūr.mus, a, um, *most*, adj., comp. and sup. of multus. (N. B., the sing. plus is generally a neut. subst. or an adv.)

pluteus, i, m., *a breastwork* made of planks or wickerwork covered with hides, used as a protection for soldiers engaged in a siege.

pōcŭlum, i. n., *a cup, a drinking-vessel.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

pollex, pollĭcis, m., *thumb, great toe.*

pollĭcĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to promise.*

pollĭcĭtātĭo, ōnis, f., *a promise.*

pondus, ĕris, n., *a weight.* [pendo.]

pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put, to place*; in pass., *to rest* on, *depend* on anything.

pons, ntis, m., *a bridge.*

pŏpŭlātio, ōnis, f., *a laying waste, ravaging.*

pŏpŭlor, āri, ātus, *to lay waste, ravage.* [pŏpŭlus.]

pŏpŭlus, i, m., *a people, the people*; *a district*, with reference to its inhabitants; *a community*; **Populus Romanus**, *the Roman people*, never plur.

porrectus, a, um, (pf. part. of porrigo), adj., *level.*

porrĭgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, *reach out, stretch forth, extend.*

porro, adv., *furthermore, now.*

porta, ae, f., *a gate.*

porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear or carry along.*

portōrium, i, n., *toll, tax, customs duties.* [porto, carry.]

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

posco, ĕre, poposci, no supine, *demand.*

positus, v. pono.

possessĭo, ōnis, f., *a possession, a property.*

possĭdeo, sidēre, sēdi, sessum, *hold, occupy, possess.*

possīdo, sīdĕre, sēdi, sessum, *take possession of.*

possum, posse, pŏtŭi, *to be able*; *I* (*thou*, etc.) *can.* [potis, sum.]

post, prep. w. acc. and adv., *after.*

postēā, adv., *after this* or *that, afterwards.*

postēāquam, conj., *after (that).*

postĕrus, a, um, adj., *coming after, following, next.* [post.]

post-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to postpone, put off.*

postquam, conj., *after.*

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally.* [postremus, sup. of posterus.]

postrīdiē, adv., *on the following day, on the morrow.*

postulātum, i, n., *a demand.*

postŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to demand.*

pŏtens, tis, part of possum; as adj. *powerful.*

potentātus, ūs, m., *power, headship, supremacy.*

pŏtentia, ae, f., *power.* (See note, vi. 12,) [potens.]

pŏtestās, ātis, f., *power*; *opportunity.* [possum.]

pŏtior, potīrí, potītus sum, *to become master of; gain possession of*; governs abl.

pŏtius, adv., *rather.*

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with*; *on account of.*

prae-acutus, a, um, adj., *sharpened in front, at the end, pointed.*

praebĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to show, present.*

praecăveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *guard against, take precautions.*

praeceps, cipitis, adj., *headlong, with great speed; steep, precipitous.* [caput.]

praecēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *go before; surpass.*

praeceptum, i, n., *instruction, command, injunction.*

praeceptus, a, um, part. praecipio.

prae-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to bid, direct, order.* [capio.]

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praecĭpŭus, a, um, adj., *special.* [praecipio.]

praeclūdo, ĕre, clūdi, clūsum, *to hinder, stop, close.*

prae-clūsus. See praecludo.

praeco, ōnis, m., *a crier, herald.*

prae-curro, ĕre, cucurri or curri, cursum, *run before, outstrip.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

prae-dīco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to proclaim, assert, taunt.*

praedor, ari, atus sum, *pillage, plunder, get booty.*

praedūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *draw before, build before.*

praefectus, a, um, pf. part. of praeficio.

praefectus, i, m., *officer, captain.*

prae-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to carry in front, to place* a person or thing *before* another in esteem or reputation, *to prefer.*

prae-fĭcĭo, ficĕre, fēci, fectum, *to place in front* or *at the head of, to appoint to the command of.* [prae, facio.]

praefīgo, fīgĕre, fixi, fixum, *fix* or *place in front.*

praemĕtuo, ĕre, ui, no supine, *fear for, be anxious.*

prae-missus, a, um, part. of praemitto, *sent on beforehand.*

praemitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send before, send in advance.*

praemĭum, ĭi, n., *a reward.* [prae, emo.]

prae-occupo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to occupy beforehand.*

praeopto, are, avi, atum, *choose in preference, prefer.*

prae-păro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prepare.*

praepōno, ponĕre, posui, positum, *to set anyone in command over.*

praerumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *break off.*

praeruptus, a, um, adj., *steep, precipitous.* [rumpo.]

praescrībo, ĕre, scripsi, scriptum, *order, direct, command.*

praescriptum, i, n., *an order*; pl., *instructions.*

praesens, tis, adj., *that is before one, at hand, present.* [prae, sum.]

praesentĭa, ae, f., *presence, the present time*: in **praesentiâ**, *at hand, on the spot*; sometimes regarded as n. pl.

prae-sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sensum, *to perceive beforehand.*

praesēpio, īre, sēpsi, sēptum, *fence in, block up.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *protection, help.* [prae, sedeo.]

praesto, adv., *at hand*: praesto esse, *to present oneself.*

praesto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum and sta-

tum, *to discharge, fulfil.* pr. fidem, *keep one's word.*

prae-sum, esse, fŭi, *to be at the head of, in command of.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *except.*

praetĕrēā, adv., *besides.*

praetereo, ire, ivi or ii, ĭtum, *pass over, pass by.*

praeterĭtus, part. of **praetereo.**

praetermitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *pass over, let slip, omit.*

praterquam, adv., *except, beyond, besides.*

praetor, ōris, m., (1) *general or commander*; (2) *praetor*, a magistrate who performed the duties of judge at Rome.

praetōrius, a, um, *of* or *belonging to the commander, pretorian*; **praetoria cohors**, *the general's body-guard*; **praetoria porta**, *the front gate* of the camp, opposite the praetorium or general's tent.

prae-ūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *to burn at the point.*

praeustus, a, um, part. praeuro.

praeverto, vertĕre, verti, versum, *outstrip, anticipate.*

prāvus, a, um, adj., *bad, wicked.*

precem, preci, prece, defective noun; pl. preces; *prayer, entreaty.*

prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to press, press upon, oppress.*

prendo, prendĕre, prendi, prensum, *take, grasp.*

prĕtium, i, n., *price, value.*

(prex) precis, f., defect. *prayer, entreaty, supplication*; *curse.*

prīdĭē, adv., *on the day before.*

prīmipīlus, i, m., *chief centurion.* See **pīlus.**

prīmo, adv., *in the first place.*

prīmum, adv., *in the first place;* quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, adj. sup., *the first, foremost.*

princeps, ĭpis, adj., *first, chief;* as subst., comm., *a chief, chieftain.* [primus, capio.]

princĭpātus, ūs, m., *the first place, supremacy, chieftainship.* [princeps.]

prior, us, adj., *former, previous, first;* **priores**, *those in advance.*

pristĭnus, a, um, adj., *former, old, old-fashioned.*

prĭus, foll. by quam, and, as one word, **priusquam**, adv. comp., *sooner than, before, before that.*

prīvātim, adv., *as an individual, privately.*

prīvātus, a, um, part. privo, *to deprive*; as adj., *belonging to an individual, private.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of.*

prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to prove, demonstrate*; *to approve.*

prō-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth, to advance.*

prōclīno, are, avi, atum, *bend forward*; pf. part. pass., *tottering to a fall.*

prōcunsul, ŭlis, m., *a proconsul,* one assigned to the government of a province after having held the consulship.

prŏcŭl, adv., *in the distance, from afar.* [procello, to drive away.]

prō-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbŭi, cŭbĭtum, *to sink down to the ground.*

prō-cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take care of, look after.*

prō-curro, ĕre, cŭcurri and curri, cursum, *to run forth, rush forward.*

prŏdēo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum, *to come* or *go forth.* [pro, eo.]

prōdesse. See **prōsum.**

prōdĭtio, ōnis, f., *a betraying, treachery.*

prōdĭtor, ōris, m., *a betrayer, traitor.* [prodo.]

prōdĭtus, a, um, part. prodo.

prō-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give forth; to hand down* (to memory), *transmit, record.*

prō-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead out.*

prōductus, a, um, part. produco.

proelior, āri ātus, *to engage, fight a battle.*

proelĭum, ĭi, n., *a battle, combat.*

prōfectĭo, ōnis, f., *a going away, setting out.* [proficiscor.]

prōfectus. See **prōficio.**

prŏfectus. See **proficiscor.**

prōfero, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *bring forward* or *forth.*

prōficio, ficĕre, fēci, fectum, *advance; effect, gain.*

prŏfĭciscor, profic-isci prŏfectus, *to set out, start, depart.*

prŏfĭtĕor, ēri, fessus, *to declare publicly avow; to offer freely, promise.* [pro, fateor.]

prōflīgo, are, avi, atum, *put to flight, rout.*

prōfluo, fluĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow from, rise.*

prŏ-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee, decamp.*

prō-gnātus, a, um, part. [gnatus= natus, nascor], *born, sprung, descended.*

prō-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to go forward, advance.* [gradior.]

prŏ-hĭbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to keep back, hinder, prevent; to defend, protect.* [habeo.]

prō-ĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to throw forth, fling away.* [pro-iacio.]

prŏinde, adv., *accordingly, therefore; (in like manner).*

prōmĭneo, ēre, ui., no supine, *bend forward.*

prōmiscuē, adv. *promiscuously, in common.*

prō-missus, a, um, pf. part. of promitto; (of hair) *long, flowing.*

prōmōtus. See **promoveo.**

prōmŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move forward.*

promptus, a, um, adj., *ready.*

prōmuntūrium, i, n., *headland.*

prōnē, adv., *bending* or *leaning forward.*

prō-nuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce, proclaim.*

prŏpĕ, comp. prŏpĭus, prep. w. acc. and adv., *near, nigh.*

prō-pello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *to drive before oneself, to drive back.*

prŏ-pĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hasten.*

prŏpinquĭtās, ātis, f., *nearness.* [propinquus.]

prŏpinquus, a, um, adj., *near;* as subst., **prŏpinquus**, i, m., *a kinsman, relation.*

prŏpior, *nearer*; **proximus**, *next, last* or *next preceding*; no positive adj., adv., **prope.**

prō-pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to put* or *set forth, to point out, to offer, proffer as a reward.*

prōprĭus, a, um, adj., *one's own, special*: as subst., **proprium**, ii, n., *a peculiar* or *characteristic mark, a sign.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *by reason of, on account of.*

proptĕrĕā, adv., *on this account, for this reason*: **propterea quod**, *because.*

prōpugnātor, ōris, m., *combatant, defender.*

prō-pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

prō-pulsō, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to drive back, repel.* [propello.]

prōra, ae, f., *prow* of a ship.

prō-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to pursue, to continue the pursuit.*

prōspectus, a, um, see **prospicio**.

prōspectus, ūs. m., *view, sight.*

prōspicio, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *look out; provide for.*

prōsterno, ĕre, stravi, stratum, *lay low, destroy.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, *to benefit, be of service to.*

prō-tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover in front, cover, protect.*

prō-terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to frighten* or *scare away, to affright.*

prōtĭnus, adv., *forthwith.*

prōturbo, are, avi, atum, *drive away, repulse.*

prōvectus, see prōvĕho.

prōvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *to advance, carry forward.*

prōvĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come forth, to be produced, to grow.*

prōventus, ūs, m., *result, issue, outcome.*

prō-vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, (1) *to see beforehand, to foresee,* (2) *provide for.*

prōvincĭa, ae, f., *a province.*

provinciālis, ĕ, adj., *of* or *belonging to a province.*

prōvīsus, v. prōvideo.

prōvŏlo, are, avi, atum, *fly forth, dash forth.*

proxĭmē, adv.

proxĭmus, a, um, adj., *nearest, next.*

prūdentia, ae, f., *foresight, prudence.*

pūbes and **pūber**, ĕris, adj,, *grown up, adult;* as subst., **pūbĕres**, um, m., *grown up men, men.*

publĭcē, adv , *on behalf* or *in the name of the State* or *people.* [publicus.]

publĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take and apply to the use of the State* or *community, to confiscate.* [publicus.]

publĭcus, a, um, adj., *belonging to the people, State,* or *community.* [for populicus, from populus.]

pŭdet, ēre, puduit or pudĭtum est, impers. v., *it shames;* me pudet, *I am ashamed.*

pŭdor, ōris, m., *shame, modesty.*

puer, ĕri, m., *a boy, child.*

pŭĕrīlis, e, adj., *boyish, of boyhood.* [puer.]

pugna, ae, f., *a battle, combat, fight.*

pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to fight.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *beautiful; noble*

pulsus, a, um. See **pello**.

pulsus, ūs, m., *stroke.* [pello.]

pulvis, ĕris, m., *dust.*

puppis, is, f., *stern.*

purgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to clear, exculpate, excuse.*

pŭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

Q.

Q.=Quintus.

quā, adv., *where, by which way.* [abl. f. of qui.]

quadrāgēni, ae, a, distrib. num., *forty each.*

quădringenti, ae, a, card, num. adj., *four hundred.* [quattuor, centum.]

quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, *to seek, ask, enquire.*

quaestĭo, ōnis, f., *an examination* or *inquisition by torture.* [quaero.]

quaestor, ōris, m., *a quaestor.*

quaestus, ūs, m, *a gaining, acquiring.* [quaero.]

quālis, ĕ, interrog. adj., *of what sort?*

quam, adv. and conj.; (1) *as*; (2) *than*: with superl. adj. or adv., *as..as possible.*

quamobrem, adv., *wherefore.*

quamvīs, adv., *however much* or *many; as much as you will; although;* **quamvis pauci**, *no matter how few.*

quando, adv., (interrog. *when*); after si, *at any time.*

quanto, rel. adv., *by as much as, according as, the* (e.g. "*the* more the merrier"). [quantus.]

quantŏpere, adv., *how much, how deeply* or *greatly.*

quantum, adv., *how much, as much, as far as.*

quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how much; as much as.* [quam.]

quantus-vīs, tăvis, tumvis, adj., *as great as you will, ever so great, no matter how great.* [vīs, fr. volo, vīs, vult, "*you wish.*"]

quārē, adv., *wherefore, why.* [quae, res.]

quartus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *the fourth.*

quăsĭ, conj., *as if.*

quattŭor, card. num. adj., *four.*

-que, conj., (enclitic, i.e., appended to previous word), *and.*

quemadomum, adv., *in what way, how.*

quĕror, quĕri, questus sum, *to complain.*

questus. See **queror.**

qui, quae, quod, pron. rel. and (used adjectively) interrog., *who, which, what, that.*

quicquam. See **quisquam.**

quīcumque, (or **-cunque**), quaecumque, quodcumque, pron. rel. *whoever, whatever, all that, everything that.*

quid, (neut. of **quis**), adv., *why?*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, pron. indef., *a certain, a certain one, one.*

quĭdem, adv., *indeed.*

quĭēs, ētis, f., *rest, repose.*

quĭētus, a, um, adj., *at rest, quiet, peaceful.* [quiesco, quies.]

quīn, conj., *but that, that not.* [qui, *how*, ne.]

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, pron. interrog., *who, which; what, pray?* [In ch. 44, B. V.=uter.]

quincunx, uncis, f., *a quincunx*, an arrangement of trees or other objects in fives, thus: :·: :·: :·:

quindĕcim, *fifteen.*

quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred.* [quinque, centum.]

quīni, ae, a, num. distrib. adj., *five each, five at a time.*

quinquāginta, *fifty.*

quinque, card. num., indecl., *five.*

quintus, a, um, adj., *fifth.*

quis, (quae), quid, (1) pron. interrog., *who? which? what?* (2) pron. indef. after ne, si, nisi, *any one, anything.* **ne quis**, *in order that no man.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, pron. indef., *any.*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, pron. indef. *any, any one, anything* (always in a negative connection).

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, pron. indef., *each, every.*

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid, or quodquod, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or quodvīs, indef. pron., *any one you wish, any one at all.*

quō, adv., *whither.*

quō, conj., *in order that* (used with comparative degree instead of **ut**).

quŏ-ad, conj., *till, until.*

quod, conj., *because; that.*

quōmĭnus, conj., *so that not*, (lit. *by which the less*), used after verbs of hindering, and rendered by Eng. *from.*

quŏn-ĭam, conj., *since, seeing that, whereas.* [quom=cum, iam.]

quŏ-que, conj., *also, too.*

quōque, abl. of quisque, *each.*

quōqueversum (quoquoversum), adv., *in every direction.*

quot, indecl. rel. adj., *how many, as many, which number.*

quŏtănnīs, adv., *every year, yearly.*

quŏtĭens or **quŏtĭes**, adv., *how often, as often as.* [quot.]

quotīdiē, adv., *daily; day by day.*

R.

rādix, īcis, f., *a root.*

rādo, ĕre, rāsi, rāsum, *shave.*

rāmus, i, m., *a bough, branch.*

răpĭditās, ātis, f., *swiftness.* [rapidus, rapio.]

rapīna, ae, f., *pillage, plunder.*

rārus, a, um, adj., *few, sparse, few and far between.*

rāsus, a um, part. of rado, *shaven.*

rătĭo, ōnis, f., *a reckoning, an account; a transaction, business; a care, consideration, regard* for a thing; *fashion, system, way.*

rătis, is, f., *a raft.*

rĕ-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to go back, fall back, retire.*

rĕcens, tis, adj., *fresh, recent.*

recenseo, ēre, censui, censum and censītum, *review.*

receptāculum, i, n., *place of shelter, retreat.*

receptus, a, um, pf. part. of recipio.

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat, refuge.*

rĕcessus, ūs, m., *a going back, retreat.* [recedo.]

recĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, cāsum, *fall back, return.*

recĭpero, are, avi, atum, *get back, recover.* See recupero.

rĕ-cĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive; se, to betake oneself* anywhere, *to retire, retreat.* [capio.]

rĕ-cĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to read out* (a letter, etc.).

rĕ-clīno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bend back, lean back.*

rectē, adv., *rightly, properly.*

rectus, a, um, adj., *straight, direct.*

rĕ-cŭpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get back, recover, regain.*

rĕ-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, *to object to, refuse.* [causa.]

rēda. See **rhēda.**

redactus. See **redigo.**

reddĭtus, see red-do.

red-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give back, restore; to render, grant.*

rĕd-ĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, *to come back; to be reduced to; to be referred to.*

rĕd-ĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to bring* or *reduce* to any condition. [ago.]

rĕdĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *buy back, purchase; farm* (revenues).

rĕdintegro, are, avi, atum, *renew; revive.*

rĕditio, ōnis, f., *a going back, returning.*

rĕditus, ūs, m., *a returning, return.*

rĕ-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead back, draw off* troops.

rĕfectus. *V.* reficio.

rĕfĕro, -ferre, rettŭli (retuli), rĕlātum, *to carry back; report; refer.* **gratiam referre**, *to show gratitude, to repay, requite.*

rĕfĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *to refit, repair.*

refractus. See **refringo.**

refringo, fringere, frēgi, fractum, *break, break down.* [frango.]

rĕ-fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, *to flee back.*

rĕgĭo, ōnis, f., *a district, territory.* [rego.]

rēgius, a, um, adj., *kingly, royal.*

regno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be king, to reign.* [regnum.]

regnum, i, n., *kingly authority, sovereignty, chieftainship; a kingdom, the territory* of a king or chief. [rex.]

rĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to direct; to control, govern, rule.*

rĕ-grĕdĭor, i, gressus, *to go back, retreat.*

rēiectus, a, um, part. reicio.

rē-ĭcĭo, ĕre, reiēci, iectum, *to cast back, drive back.* [ıacio.]

relanguesco, ere, langui, no supine, *become enfeebled.*

rĕlātus; a, um, part. refero.

rĕ-lēgātus, a, um, part. relēgo.

rĕ-lēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to send away, remove out of the way.*

rĕlictus, a, um, v. relinquo.

rĕlĭgĭo, ōnis, f., *reverence for the gods, religion*: in plur., *superstitious practices; matters of religion, scruples of conscience.*

rĕ-linquo, ĕre, līqui, lictum, *to leave behind, to leave remaining*: pass., *to remain.*

rĕlĭquus, a, um, adj., *that is left, remaining;* in plur. as subst. **rĕlĭqui**, ōrum, m., *the others, the rest.* [relinquo.]

rĕmăneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to stay, remain behind.*

rēmex, ĭgis, m., *rower.*

rĕmigro, are, no pf., no supine, *move back, remove.*

rēmĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to row.*

reminiscor, minisci, no pf., no supine, *remember, recollect*, gov's gen.

rĕ-missus, a, um, part of remitto; as adj., *slack, less severe.*

rĕ-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send back, to slacken, remit, abate.*

remollesco, escĕre, no perf. or supine, *become weak.*

remōtus, a, um, adj., *far off, remote.*

rĕ-mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move back, withdraw.*

remūneror, ari, atus sum, *recompense, repay.* [munus.]

rēmus, i, m., *an oar.*

rēnō, (rhēno), ōnis, m., some take this to mean *a reindeer-skin*; it is probably *a fur pelisse* or *jacket*, made from the skin of an animal dressed with the hair on.

rĕnŏvo, are, avi, atum, *renew.*

renuntio, iare, iavi, iatum, *bring back word, report; declare elected.*

rĕ-pello, ĕre, reppŭli, rĕpulsum, *to drive back.*

rĕpente, adv., *suddenly.*

rĕpentīno, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

rĕpentīnus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unlooked-for.*

rĕ-pĕrĭo, īre, reppĕri, rĕpertum, *to find, meet with.* [pario.]

rĕpertus, a, um, part. reperio.

rĕ-pĕto, ĕre, ĭi or īvi, ītum, *to ask* or *apply again for; demand as a right.*

repleo, ēre, plēvi, plētum, *fill up, supply amply.*

rĕ-porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear back.*

rĕ-posco, ĕre, (no perf. or sup.), *to exact, require.*

repraesento, are, avi, atum, *do at once* or *forthwith.*

re-prĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to blame, find fault with.*

rĕpressus, p. part. of **reprĭmo**, *to check.*

rĕpŭdio, iare, iavi, iatum, *reject, scorn.*

rĕpugno, are, avi, atum, *oppose, resist.*

rĕpulsus, a, um, part. repello.

rĕquīro, ĕre, quīsīvi or ĭi, quīsītum, *to demand.* [quaero.]

rēs, rĕi, f., *a thing, matter, fact, event,* etc. The exact meaning depends on the context, e.g. **res frumentaria**, *corn supply, provisions.*

rĕsarcio, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, *repair, make good.*

rescĭdi, see rescindo.

rescindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *to break up.* [scindo, *to cleave.*]

rescisco, ĕre, scīvi, scītum, *discover, find out.*

rescrībo, ĕre, scripsi, scriptum, *transfer* from one branch of the army to another; *re-enlist.*

rĕ-servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to save up, reserve*; *halt.*

rĕsĭdeo, ēre, sēdi, no supine, *remain behind, be left.*

rĕsīdo, ĕre, sēdi, no supine, *settle down, subside.*

rĕ-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, *to oppose, withstand.*

rē-spĭcio, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to look back* or *behind one.*

rē-spondĕo, ēre, di, sum, *to answer, reply.*

rē-sponsum, i, n., *an answer.*

rēs-publĭca, reipublicae, f., *a commonwealth, state*; *the public weal.*

rē-spuo, spuĕre, spui, no supine, *spit out*; *reject.*

rē-stinguo, ĕre, stinxi, stinctum, *put out, extinguish.*

rē-stĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, *to set up again; to replace, restore, revive.* [statuo.]

rĕ-tĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold fast, keep, maintain, preserve.*

re-traho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *bring back, drag back.*

rĕ-vello, ĕre, velli, vulsum, *pull back, tear away, tear down.*

rĕ-versus. See **revertor.**

rĕ-verto, ĕre, verti, versum, *return,* found chiefly in perf. tenses; the other tenses usually deponent.

rĕ-vertor, i, versus, *to turn back, return, retire.*

re-vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind together, hold, fasten.*

rĕ-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to recall, summon to return, challenge.*

rex, rēgis, m., *a ruler* of a territory, *a king, chieftain.* [rego.]

rhēda, ae, f., *carriage, chariot.*

rīpă ae, f., *a bank of a river.*

rīvus, i, m., *a small stream of water, a brook.*

rōbur, ŏris, n., *oak.*

rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ask, beg, request.*

rōstrum, i, n., *beak* of a ship, sharp prow used as a ram in fighting.

rŏta, ae, f., *wheel.*

rŭbus, i, m., *bramble-bush.*

rūmor, ōris, m., *hearsay, unauthenticated report, rumor.*

rūpēs, is, f., *cliff, steep rock.*

rursus, adv., *back, back again, again.* [contr. fr. revorsus from revertor.]

S.

sacerdos, dōtis, c., *priest.* [sacer, do.]

sacrāmentum, i, n., *oath, military oath, oath of allegiance.*

săcrĭfĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *a sacrifice.* [sacer, facio.]

saepe, adv., *frequently, often.*

saepenumero, v. saepe.

saevio, īre, ii, ītum, *be furious, rage.* [saevus.]

sagitta, ae, f., *an arrow.*

sagittarius, i, n., *an archer, bowman.*

săgŭlum, i, n., dimin., *a small military cloak.* [sagum.]

saltus, ūs, m., (1) *a woodland pasture*; (2) *a mountain pass.*

sălūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*

sancĭo, īre, xi, ctum, *to make sacred*

or *inviolable* by a religious act; *to decree, establish, ordain.*

sanctus, a, um, part. sancio: as adj., of persons, *sacred, inviolable.*

sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, ātis, f., *soundness* of mind, *good sense.*

sāno, are, avi, atum, *make sound, cure, remedy.*

sānus, a, um, adj., *moderate, reasonable.*

săpĭo, ĕre, īvi or ĭi, *to have sense* or *discernment.*

sarcĭna, ae, f., *baggage, pack* of an individual soldier; see Introduction.

sarcio, īre, sarsi, sartum, *to mend, repair.*

sarmentum, i, n., *a twig;* in pl., *faggot.*

satisfactio, ōnis, f., *apology, excuse.*

sătisfăcio, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content*; *to make excuse, apologize.*

sătus. See **sero**.

saucĭus, a, um, adj., *wounded.*

saxum, i, n., *stone, rock.*

scāla, ae, f., *a ladder, a scaling-ladder.* [for scandla, from scando, *to climb.*]

scăpha, ae, f., *skiff, light boat.* [σκάφη.]

scĕlĕrātus, a, um, part. scelero: as adj., *bad, wicked, infamous:* in masc., subst., *a miscreant.*

scĕlĕro, āre, no perf., ātum, *to pollute with crime.* [scelus.]

scĕlus, ĕris, n., *sin, crime.*

scienter, adv., *cleverly, wisely.* [scio.]

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, skill, cleverness.*

scindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *to cut, rend*: vallum, *to pull* or *tear down.*

scĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, *to know.*

scorpio, ōnis, m., *scorpion*, a military engine for throwing stones and darts in time of siege.

scrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *to write.*

scrŏbis, is, m. and f., *pit.*

scūtum, i, n., *a shield.*

sē, sēsē, pron. reflex. of both numbers (gen. sui, dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sēsē), *himself, herself, itself, themselves*: **interse**, *with (from) each other.*

sēcĭus, adv., comp. of sĕcus, *otherwise:* nihilo secius, *nevertheless.*

sĕco, are, secui, sectum, *cut.*

sēcrēto, adv., *in secret, secretly.*

sectio, ōnis, f., *booty.*

sector, āri, ātus sum, intensive, *to pursue eagerly.* [sequor.]

sectūra, ae, f., *a cutting, diggings, excavation, mine.*

sĕcundum, prep. with acc., *next to*; *according to*; *after.*

sĕcundus, a, um, adj., (1) *the following* or *next to the first* in time or order, *the second*; (2) *favorable.* [sequor.]

sĕcūris, is, f., *axe;* figuratively *power, authority*, with reference to the lictor's axe, carried as an emblem of a magistrate's power.

sĕcus, adv., *otherwise*; **sēcius**. compar., **nihilo sēcius**, *none the less, nevertheless.*

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdĕcim, indecl. num., *sixteen.* [sex, decem.]

sēdēs, is, f., *a seat, dwelling-place, settlement.* [sedeo.]

sēdĭtio, ōnis, f., *mutiny, revolt, sedition.*

sēdĭtiōsus, a, um, adj., *seditious, mutinous.*

sĕgĕs, ĕtis, f., *corn-field, standing grain, corn in the field, crop.*

semel, adv., *once.*

sēmentis, is, f., *sowing, planting.* [sēmen.]

sēmĭta, ae, f., *a path.*

semper, adv., *always, ever.*

senātor, ōris, *a senator*, member of the Roman senate; applied by Caesar to the Gallic *councillor.*

sĕnātus, ūs., m., *the council of elders, the Senate.* [senex.]

sĕnex, sĕnis, m., *an old man.*

sēni, ae, a, distrib. num., *six apiece.* [sex.]

sententĭa, ae, f., *a way of thinking, opinion.* [sentio.]

sentĭo, sentire, sensi, sensum, *to perceive, notice, observe.*

sentis, is, m., *thorn, brier.*

sēparātim, adv., *separately.*

sēparātus, a, um, adj., *separated, put off to one side.*

sēpăro, are, avi, atum, *to separate, to part* or *divide.*

sēpēs, is, f., *hedge.*

septem, card. num. adj., *seven.*

septentrĭo, ōnis, almost always in the plural, *the seven stars of the Bear, the north.* [literally the seven ploughing oxen, septem triones.]

septĭmus, a, um, ord. num. adj., *seventh.* [septem.]

septingenti, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred.* [septem centum.]

septuāgintā, indecl. num., *seventy.*

sĕpultūra, ae, f., *burial.* [sepelio.]

sĕquor, i, sĕcūtus or sequūtus sum, *to follow, attend.*

sermo, ōnis, m., *a talking, conversation.* [sero=*to join* words.]

sēro, adv., *too late.* [serus.]

sĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sătum, *to sow, plant.*

servīlis, e, adj., *belonging to* or *of a slave.* [servus.]

servio, ire, ivi, or ii, ītum, *be a slave, to serve, be devoted to.*

servĭtūs, ūtis, f., *slavery.* [servus.]

servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to keep, lay up, preserve*; *beset, watch.*

servus, i, m., *a slave, serf.*

sēsquipedālis, e, adj., *a foot and a half* wide, thick, &c. [sēsqui, one half more; pes, foot.]

seu. See **sive.**

sĕvēritās, tātis, f., *sternness, strictness, rigor, stringency.*

sē-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call apart, take aside.*

sexāgintā, *sixty.*

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred.* [sex, centum.]

sexdĕcim. See **sedĕcim.**

sī, conj., *if.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus.*

siccĭtās, ātis, f., *dryness* (of the weather), *drought.* [siccus.]

sīc-ut, adv., *as, just as.*

sīc-ŭti = sicut.

sīdus, ĕris, n., *a constellation, a group of stars.*

signĭfĭcātĭo, ōnis, f., *a making of a sign* or *token*; *tidings.* [signum, facio.]

signĭfĭco, are, avi, atum, *show, indicate, intimate by signs.*

signum, i, n., *a military standard, ensign.*

sĭlentium, i, n., *silence.* [sĭleo.]

silva, ae, f., *a wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, adj., *wooded, woodland.* [silva.]

sĭmĭlis, e, adj., *like, like unto.*

sĭmĭlitudo, ĭnis, f., *resemblance, similarity.*

sĭmŭl, adv., *at the same time, at once*; sometimes=**simul atque.**

sĭmŭlācrum, i, n., *an image.* [simulo = *to make like*, similis.]

sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, f., *pretence.*

simul atque, conj. adv., *as soon as.*

sĭmultās, ātis, f., *deceit.*

sīn, conj., *if however, but if.*

sĭne, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim (singulatim), adv., *one by one, singly.* [singuli.]

singŭlāris, e, adj. (*alone of its kind,* hence) *singular, remarkable.* [singuli.]

singŭli, ae, a, distrib. num adj., *one to each, separate, singly.*

sĭnister, tra, trum, adj., *left hand, adverse.*

sinistra, ae, f., *the left hand;* **sub sinistrā**, *on the left;* (sinistra really an adj. qual. manus understood.)

sĭnistrorsus, adv., *towards the left side, to the left.* [sinistro versus.]

sĭno, sĭnĕre, sīvi, sĭtum, *permit, allow, let.*

sīquĭdem, conj., *if only, in so far as.*

sĭtus, ūs, m., *position.* [sino.]

sīve (seu), conj. *whether* (= *either if*), **sive (seu)...sive (seu)**, *whether...or.*

sŏcer, ĕri, m., *father-in-law.*

sociĕtās, ātis, f., *alliance, league.*

sŏcĭus, ĭi, m., *an ally.*

Sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun, the Sun-god.*

sōlātium, i, n., *consolation.* [sōlor, console.]

soldŭrius, i, m., *retainer, follower.*

sŏlĕo, ēre, ĭtus sum, semi-dep., *to be accustomed, to be wont.*

sŏlĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *a lonely place, a desert, wilderness.* [solus.]

sollertia, ae, f., *skill, cleverness, versatility.*

sollĭcĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try to win over, incite, instigate* for warlike purposes.

sollĭcĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., *anxiety,*

sŏlum, i, n., *the soil, ground;* **solum agri**, *the bare ground;* **solum fossae** *bottom of the trench.*

sōlum, adv., *only.*

sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only.*

solvo, ĕre, solvi, sŏlūtum, *to loose;* (naves), *to weigh anchor, set sail.*

sŏnĭtus, ūs, m., *sound, noise.*

sŏnus, i, m., *sound.*

sŏror, ōris, f., *sister,*—**soror ex matre**, *half sister on mother's side.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot, chance.*

spătĭum, ĭi, n., *a space, distance, interval.*

spĕcĭes, ēi, f., *outward appearance, look, seeming:* **in speciem**, *for a show, seemingly.* [specio].

specto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, look to, bear in mind; to look for,* i.e., *await, expect.* [specio.]

spĕcŭlātor, ōris, m., *a scout, explorer.*

spĕculātōrius, a, um, adj., *for scouting, spying,*—**navigium speculatorium**, *a spy-boat.*

spĕculor, ari, atus sum, *watch, reconnoitre.*

spēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope, expect.*

spes, spĕi, f., *hope.*

spīrĭtus, ūs, m., *breath, air;*—pl., *airs, pride.*

spŏlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *to rob, despoil, strip off.*

sponte, abl. f., no other case found but a (rare) gen. spontis: in expressions, sponte meâ, tuâ, suâ, *of free will, of one's own accord.* [spondeo.]

stătim, adv., *on the spot,* i.e., *at once, forthwith, straight-way, immediately.* [sto.]

stătio, ōnis, f., *an outpost, a roadstead.*

statuo, uĕre, ui, ūtum, *place, determine, judge; resolve; take measures.*

stătus, ūs, m., *position, situation, condition.*

stătūra, ae, f., *height* or *size* of the body, *stature.* [sto.]

stătus, ūs, m., *condition, position, circumstances.* [sto.]

stĭmulus, i, m., *a goad; a sharp stake* set in the ground as an obstacle to an advancing enemy.

stīpendiārius, a, um, adj., *tributary, subject to tribute*; pl., subst., **stipendiarii**, *tributaries.*

stīpendĭum, ĭi, n., *a tax, tribute; soldier's pay.* [stips, pendo.]

stīpĕs, itis, m., *log, trunk of a tree.*

stirps, is, f., *stem, stock, race.*

sto, āre, stĕti, stătum, *to stand; to abide, adhere to.*

strāmentum, i, n., *straw:* (casae) stramentis tectae, *thatched.* [sterno.]

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter.*

stŭdĕo, ēre, ŭi, *to take pains about, devote oneself to.*

stŭdĭōsē, adv., *eagerly, carefully, with much pains.* [studium.]

stŭdĭum, ĭi, n., *study, devotion to*: studia rei militaris, *military pursuits.* [studeo.]

stultitia, ae, f., *folly, lack of foresight.*

sŭb, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under.*

subactus. See **subĭgo.**

subdŏlus, a, um, adj., *crafty, cunning.*

sub-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to draw up.*

subductĭo, ōnis, f., *the hauling ashore of a ship.* [sub, duco.]

subĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to enter, undergo.*

subfŏdio (suff.), ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *stab underneath.* [fodio, dig.]

sŭb-ĭcio, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to place beneath.*

sub-iectus, a, um, part. of subicio, *lying beneath.*

subĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *subdue, conquer.*

sŭbĭto, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.* [sub, eo.]

subĭtus, a, um, adj., *sudden, unexpected.*

sublātus, a, um, part. **tollo.**

sub-lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise up, support.*

sublĭca, ae, f., *a stake, pile.*

sublŭo, ĕre, no perf., lūtum, *wash.*

subministro, are, avi, atum, *supply, provide.*

sub-mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send up* (reinforcements).

submŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move out of the way, move on, repulse.*

subrŭo, ĕre, rŭi, rūtum, *to undermine.*

sub-sĕquor, i, cūtus, *to follow close after.*

subsĭdĭum, ĭi, n., *aid, relief, reinforcement, support.* [sub-sideo.]

subsīdo, ĕre, sēdi, sessum, *stay, remain behind.*

sub-sisto, ĕre, stĭti, *to stand still, to hold out, hold fast.*

sub-sum, no perf., esse, *to be close at hand.*

subtrăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *carry off, withdraw.*

subvectio, ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance.* [subveho.]

subvĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, *carry up.*

sub-vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come to one's aid, to succour.*

suc-cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to come into the place of, succeed.* [sub.]

suc-cendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to set on fire from below*; in gen., *to set alight, set on fire.*

successus, ūs, m., *an advance, rapid approach.*

suc-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *to cut down.*

suc-cīsus. See succido.

suc-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbui, cŭbitum, *yield, submit.*

suc-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *to run* or *hasten to the aid* or *help of.*

sŭdis (nom. sing. rare), is, f., *a stake.*

sūdor, ōris, m., *sweat*; *toil, fatigue.* [sudo, sweat.]

sufficio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *suffice*; *hold out.*

suffrāgĭum, ĭi, n., *a vote.*

suggestus, ūs, m., *a raised place, mound, platform* for speaking. [sub, gero.]

sui, sibi, etc., reflex. pron. of 3rd person, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*; lacks the nom.

summitto. See **submitto.**

sum, esse, fui, *to be.*

summa, ae, f., *the whole*; **summa imperii,** *supreme command.*

summum, i, n., neut. of **summus** as subst., *highest point or part of, top, summit*; **ab summo,** *from the top, from above.*

summus, a, um, (superl. adj., fr. superus), *the top of.*

sūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take*; **poenas sumere,** *to take satisfaction, exact the penalty, inflict punishment.*

sumptŭōsus, a, um, adj., *costly, expensive.* [sumptus.]

sumptus, ūs, m., *expense.*

superbē, adv., *proudly, haughtily.*

sŭpĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj. See superus.

sŭpĕro, āre, āvi. ātum, *to overcome, conquer, prevail.* [super.]

supersĕdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *refrain from,* gov's abl. [super, sedeo.]

sŭper-sum, esse, fui, *to be over* (as a remainder), *to be left, remain, survive.*

sŭpĕrus, a, um, adj., *that is above, upper*: comp. **sŭpĕrĭor,** ĭus, of time, *former, past, previous*; of strength in a battle or other contest, *superior, stronger, victorious*: sup. **sŭprēmus** and **summus,** of rank, etc., *highest, most distinguished*: **summae res,** *things of the highest importance.* [super.]

suppĕto, ĕre, petīvi or ii, petītum, *be at hand, hold out.*

supplēmentum, i, n., *re-enforcement.* [*a filling up*, sub, pleo.]

supplex, ĭcis, c., *a suppliant.* [sub, plico, *bend.*]

supplicātio, ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*

supplĭciter, adv., *humbly, submissively.*

supplĭcĭum, ĭi, n., *punishment,* (of death), *execution.* [supplex, sup-plico= *to bend the knees, kneel down* (for execution, etc.).]

supporto, are, avi, atum, *carry* or *bring up, convey.*

sŭprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., *above*; of time, *before.* [superus.]

suscĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *to undertake.*

suspectus, a, um, part. suspicio.

suspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, ctum, *to mistrust, suspect.* [sub specio.]

suspīcĭo, ōnis, f., *mistrust, suspicion.*

suspĭcor, ari, atus sum, *to suspect.*

sustento, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to bear, endure, support.* [sustineo.]

sustĭnĕo, ēre, tĭnui, tentum, *to hold up* or *out against, to withstand.* [subs= sub, teneo.]

sustŭli, v. tollo.

sŭus, a, um, pron. poss. of 3rd person, *his own, her own, its own, their own*; *his, her, its, their.*

T.

T.=**Titus.**

tabernāculum, i, n., *a tent.*

tăbŭla, ae, f., *writing-tablet; list.*

tabulātum, i, n., *a floor, storey* (of a tower or house).

tăceo, ēre, ui, itum, *be silent*; *say nothing, pass over in silence.*

tăcitus, a, um, adj., *silent.*

tālĕa, ae, *bar, rod* (of iron.)

tālis, e, adj., *of such a kind*; *such* (referring to quality always).

tam, adv. of degree, *so, so much.*

tămen, adv., *however, nevertheless, yet.*

tămetsi, conj., *notwithstanding that, although.* [contr. fr. tamen etsi.]

tandem, adv., *at last, finally*; in questions, *pray.*

tango, ĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum, *to touch.*

tanto, see tantus.

tantŏpĕre, adv., (=**tanto opere**), *so greatly, so very*; *so vehemently.*

tantŭlus, a, um, adj., dim., *so little, so small.* [tantus.]

tantum, adv., *so much*; *just so much and no more, only, merely.*

tantus, a, um, adj., *so great* in amount, size, etc.: subst. **tantum**, i, n., *so much*: abl. **tanto** (with comparatives), *by so much, so much the, the,* (cf. quantus).

tardē, adv., *slowly.*

tardo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to impede, retard.*

tardus, a, um, adj., *slow*; tardior, *less active.*

taurus, i, m., *a bull.*

taxus, i, f., *a yew-tree.*

tectum, i, n., *roof*; *house.* [tego, cover.]

tectus, a, um, part. tego.

tĕgĭmentum, i, n., *a covering.* [tego.]

tĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to cover.*

tēlum, i, n., *a weapon for throwing missiles, a javelin,* etc.

tĕmĕrārĭus, a, um, adj., *rash, inconsiderate.* [temere.]

tĕmĕrē, adv., *at random, rashly, heedlessly.*

tĕmĕrĭtās, ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion.* [temere.]

tēmo, ōnis, m., *the pole* of a chariot.

temperantia, ae, f., *moderation, self-control.*

tempĕrātus, a, um, part. of tempero. *temperate.*

tempero, are, avi, atum, *refrain, control one's self, forbear.*

tempestās, ātis, f., *season of the year*; *storm*; *weather.*

tempto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to try, tempt.*

tempus, ŏris, n., *time.*

tendo, ĕre, tetendi, tensum or tentum, *stretch, extend*; *pitch tent, encamp.*

tenĕbrae, arum, pl. f., *darkness.*

tĕnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold, keep.*

tĕner, era, erum, adj., *tender, young.*

tento, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try, test, tempt, try to influence, endeavor.*

tĕnŭis, e, adj., (*thin*); *feeble, weak.*

tenuitās, ātis, f., *thinness, weakness, poverty.*

tenuiter, adv., *thinly.*

ter, num. adv., *thrice, three times.*

tĕrēs, ĕtis, adj., *well-turned, round, smooth, tapering.* [tero, rub.]

tergum, i, n., *back,*—**a tergo, post tergum**, *in the rear.*

terni, ae, a, distrib. num., *three each, three at a time, by threes.*

terra, ae, f., *the* (dry) *land*; *the earth*; plur. terrae, *the earth, the world.*

terrēnus, a, um, adj., *of earth, earthy.*

terrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to frighten.*

terrĭto, are (no perf. or sup.) freq., *to put in terror, to frighten.* [terreo.]

terrŏr, ōris, m., *fright, alarm.*

tertĭus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the third.* [ter.]

tertĭus-dĕcĭmus, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the thirteenth.*

testāmentum, i, n., *will, testament.*

testĭmōnĭum, ĭi, n., *evidence, proof.* [testor.]

testis, is, c., *a witness.*

testūdo, ĭnis, f., *a tortoise.* As a military term, the word means *a covering* or *shed* for the protection of soldiers attacking fortifications. [testa=*a shell.*]

tignum, i, n., *a beam, log, pile.*

tĭmĕo, ēre, ŭi, (no sup.) *to dread, fear.*

tĭmĭdē, adv., *faint-heartedly, timidly.* [timidus, timeo.]

tĭmĭdus, a, um, adj., *fearful, afraid, alarmed, cowardly, timid.*

tĭmor, ōris, m., *dread, fear.* [timeo.]

tŏlĕro, are, avi, atum, *to bear, endure, sustain.*

tollo, tollĕre, sustŭli, sublātum, *to raise, lift,* or *set up; to take away, remove.*

tormentum, i, n., *torture.* [torqueo, *to twist.*]

torrĕo, ēre, torrŭi, tostum, *to scorch.*

tŏt, num. adj. indecl., *so many.*

tŏtĭdem, indecl. adj., *the same number, just as many.*

tōtus, a, um (gen. īus, dat. i), adj., *the whole, entire, all.*

trabs, is, f., *beam, timber.*

tractus, v. traho.

trādo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *to give* or *hand over; to deliver* by teaching, *to teach.* [trans, do.]

trādūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to lead* or *bring across* or *over.* [trans, duco.]

trāgŭla, ae, f., *a kind of javelin* or *lance* used by the Gauls. [traho.]

trăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *to draw, drag along.*

trāĭcĭo, ĕre, iēci, iectum, *to pierce through, transfix.* [trans, iacio.]

trā-no, nare, navi, natum, *swim across.* [trans, no.]

tranquillĭtās, ātis, f., *calm.*

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over, on the far side of.*

transcendo, ĕre, scendi, scensum, *climb over,*—**transcendere in naves**, *to board the ships.*

transduco. See traduco.

trans-ĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *to go across* or *over, to cross.*

trans-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear across, to bring* or *carry over.*

trans-fīgo, ĕre, xi, xum, *to pierce through, transfix.*

transfŏdio, ere, fōdi, fossum, *pierce through, stab, transfix.*

transgrĕdior, grĕdi, gressus sum, *go* or *pass over, cross.*

transĭtus, ūs, m., *a going* or *passing over, a passage, crossing.* [transeo.]

translātus, a, um, part. transfero.

trans-mărīnus, a, um, adj., *brought across* or *from beyond sea, imported.*

transmissus, ūs, m., *crossing, interval, distance.*

transmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *send over.*

transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey across.*

transtrum, i. n., *thwart, cross-beam.*

transversus, pf. part. of **transverto**; as adj., *crosswise, athwart, transverse.*

trĕcenti, ae, a, adj., *three hundred.*

trĕdĕcim, indecl. num., *thirteen.*

trĕpĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bustle about anxiously, to hurry with alarm.*

trēs, trĭa, card. num. adj., *three.*

trĭbūnus, i, m., *a chieftain, commander, tribune*; **tribuni militum**, *military tribunes,* officers of the army, six to each legion, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time.

trĭbŭo, ĕre, trĭbŭi, trĭbūtum, *to assign.*

trĭbūtum, i, n., *a stated payment, tribute.*

trīduum, i, n., *space of three days, three days.* [tres, dies.]

triennium, i, n., *space of three years, three years.* [tres, annus.]

trīgintā, indecl. num., *thirty.*

trīni, ae, a, num. adj. distrib., *three at a time*; *in groups of three.* [tres.]

trĭpertīto, adv., *in three divisions.* [tres, pars.]

triplex, plĭcis, adj., *theeefold, triple.* [tres, plico.]

trĭquĕtrus, tra, trum, adj., *triangular.*

tristis, e, adj., *sad, gloomy, sorrowful.*

tristĭtia, ae, f., *sadness, dejection.*

truncus, i, m., *trunk of a tree.*

tu, tui, pers. pron. *thou, you* (sing.); pl. **vos**, vestri or vestrum.

tŭba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ēri, tuitus or tutus sum, *look at, behold*; *see to, protect, defend, support.*

tŭli. See **fero.**

tum, adv., *then.*

tumultuor, ari, atus sum, *make a disturbance, be in confusion.*

tumultuōsē, adv., *with confusion.*

tŭmultus, ūs, m., *commotion, disturbance.*

tŭmŭlus, i, m., *a mound.* [tumeo = *to swell.*]

tunc, adv., *then, at this juncture.*

turma, ae, f., *a squadron.*

turpis, e, adj., *base, shameful, dishonorable.*

turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, basely.*

turpitudo, ĭnis, f., *baseness, dishonor.*

turris, is (acc. turrim and turrem; abl. turri and turre), f., *a tower.*

tūtē, adv., *safely, securely.*

tūtō, adv., *in safety, safely, securely.*

tūtus, a, um, part. tueor. As adj., *safe.*

tuus, a, um, poss. adj., *thy, thine*; *your* (if addressed to one person.)

U.

ŭbĭ, adv., (of place), *where*; (of time), *when.*

ŭbĭcumquĕ, adv., *wherever.*

ŭbīquĕ, adv., *anywhere, everywhere* (disting. from ŭbīquĕ = ŭbī-quĕ, "and where").

ulciscor, i, ultus, *to take vengeance on, avenge oneself on.*

ullus, a, um, adj., *any, any at all.* [for unulus, dimin. of unus.]

ultĕrĭor, ĭus, comp. adj., *farther.*

ultĭmus, a, um, sup. adj., *farthest, most distant*: **ultĭmi**, ōrum, m., *the hindmost.*

ultra, prep. with acc., *beyond, on the far side of.*

ultro, adv., *unasked*; *unprovoked*; *of one's own accord.*

ultus, v. ulciscor.

ŭlŭlātus, us, m., *a yell, war-whoop.*

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time*; (disting. fr. semper, ever = always).

ūnā, adv., *together, in company.* [unus.]

undĕ, adv., *from which place, whence.*

undĕcim, card. num. indecl., *eleven.*

undĕcimus, a, um, ord. num. *eleventh.*

undēquadrāgintā, card. num. indecl., *thirty-nine.* ["one from forty."]

undĭquĕ, adv., *from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides.*

ūnĭversus, a, um, adj., *all together, in a body, as a whole, whole.*

ūnus, a, um, card. num. adj., *one*:

ad unum, *to a man*, i. e., *without exception.*

urbānus, a, um, adj., *of the city, belonging to the city.*

urbs, is, f., *city.*

urgeo, ēre, ursi, no supine, *press, push; press hard upon, oppress.*

ūrus, i, m., *a wild-ox, aurochs.*

ūsitatus, a, um, adj., *usual, common, familiar.*

usquĕ, adv., *all the way*: usque ad, *right up to.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, employment*; *need, occasion*; *usefulness, use*: ex usu or usui esse, *to be useful* or *advantageous.* [utor.]

ūsus, a, um, part. utor.

ŭt or **ŭti**, adv. and conj., with indic., *as*; *when*; with subjunctive, *that, so that, in order that.*

ŭter, ŭtra, ŭtrum, pron. interrog., *which of the two.*

ŭter-que, ŭtrăque, ŭtrumque, pron., *each of two, both* (*separately*; opp. to ambo, *both together*).

ŭtī, conj. See ut.

ūtī, infin. of ūtor.

ūtilis, e, adj., *useful, advantageous.*

ūtilitās, ātis, f., *usefulness, advantage, benefit.*

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, *to use, accept, enjoy.*

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

utrum, conj., *whether.*

uxor, ōris f., *a wife.*

V.

văcātĭo, ōnis, f., *freedom, exemption* from a service, etc. [vaco.]

văco, are, avi, atum, *be unoccupied, lie waste.*

văcuus, a, um, adj., *empty, clear, vacant, unoccupied.*

vădum, i, n., *a ford.*

vāgīna, ae, f., *a scabbard, sheath.*

văgor, āri, ātus, *to go to and fro, roam, wander.* [vagus.]

vălĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to be strong*: *to have power* or *influence, to avail.*

valētūdo, ĭnis, f., *state of health*; *health.*

valles or **vallis**, is, f., *a vale, valley.*

vallum, i, n., *an earthen wall* or *rampart set with palisades, a rampart.*

vărĭētās, ātis, f., *diversity, variety.*

vărius, a, um, adj., *varying, different, changing.*

vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to empty of inhabitants, to lay waste.* [vastus.]

vastus, a, um, adj., *vast, wide-spreading, immense, enormous.*

vāticinātio, ōnis, f., *divination, foretelling, predicting.*

vectīgal, ālis, n., *tax.* [veho.]

vectīgālis, e, adj., *tributary*; as subst., *a tributary, one who pays tribute.*

vectōrius, a, um, adj., *for transport.* [veho.]

vehementer, adv., *vigorously, violently*; *very, exceedingly.*

vĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum *bear, carry, convey.*

vel, conj., *or*; *even.*—**vel....vel**, *either....or.*

velim and **vellem**, see volo.

vēlōcĭtās, ātis, f., *speed, swiftness.* [velox.]

vēlōcĭter, adv., *speedily, swiftly*; comp. **velocius**; sup. **velocissime.** [velox.]

vēlox, ōcis, adj., *swift, active, rapid, quick.*

vēlum, i, n., *a sail.*

vĕlut, adv., *just as.*—**velut si**, *just as if.*

vēnātĭo, ōnis, f., *hunting, the chase.* [venor.]

vēnātor, ōris, m., *a hunter.* [venor.]

vendo, ĕre, vendidi, venditum, *sell, offer, for sale.* [vēnum, do.]

vĕnia, ae, f., *pardon, favor, indulgence.*

vĕnĭo, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come.*

ventĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to come often, to keep coming.* [venio.]

ventus, i, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

verbum, i, n., *a word.*

vĕrĕor, ēri, ĭtus, *to fear* or *be afraid.*

vergo, vergĕre, *to incline, turn, verge.*

vergŏbrĕtus, i, m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

vērīsimilis, e, adj., *likely, probable.*

vĕrĭtus, a, um, part. vereor.

vērō, adv., *in truth, assuredly, however.* [verus.]

verso, are, avi, atum, *turn often*; *change.*

versor, āri, ātus, (properly the mid. form of verso, are, freq. of verto), *stay, dwell, be* in a place, or *mix among* or *with people.*

versus, ūs, m., *a line* of poetry, *a verse.*

versus, adv. and prep., *towards, in the direction of.*

verto, ĕre, verti, versum, *turn; change.*

vērus, a, um, adj., *true, real; right, just, reasonable.*

vĕrūtum, i, n., *a dart, javelin.* [veru, *a spit.*]

vesper, ĕris, (locative vesperi, acc mostly vesperum), m., *the evening.*

vester, tra, trum, adj.; *your, yours* (addressed to more than one.)

vestīgĭum,, ĭi, n., *a footprint, track, trace.*

vestio, īre, vestīvi, vestītum, *to clothe.* [vestis.]

vestis, is, f., *covering*; *garment, clothing.*

vestītus. See vestio.

veterānus, a, um, adj., *old, veteran*; as subst., *a veteran.*

vĕto, āre, vetŭi, vĕtĭtum, *to forbid.*

vĕtus, ĕris, adj., *old.*

vexillum, i, n., *a flag*; a red flag placed upon the general's tent as a signal for battle or marching.

vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harass, ravage.*

vĭa, ae, f., *a way, street, road.*

vĭātor, ōris, m., *traveller.*

vīcēni, ae, a, num., distrib. adj., *twenty each.* [viginti.]

vĭcēsĭmus (vicessimus and vigesimus), a, um, num. ord. adj., *the twentieth.* [viginti.]

vĭcĭes, adv., *twenty times.* [viginti.]

vīcīnĭtās, ātis, f., *neighborhood*; *people in a neighborhood, neighbors.*

vĭcis, (gen. ; nom. wanting) f., *change, turn*,—**in vĭcem**, *in turn.*

victĭma, ae, f., *a sacrifice, victim.*

victor, ōris, m., *a conqueror*; in apposition, *victorious.* [vinco.]

victōrĭa, ae, f., *victory.*

victus, a, um, part. vinco.

victus, ūs, m. (*that on which one lives*), *provisions, sustenance, victuals.* [vivo.]

vīcus, i, m., *village.*

vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see;* pass, **videor**, *I seem* or *am seen*; impers. pass. *to seem fit* or *good.*

vĭgĭlia, ae, f , *a being awake, a watching; sleeplessness; a watch* of the night. The Romans divided the night from sunset till sunrise into four equal "watches."

vīgintī, adj., indecl., *twenty.*

vīmen, ĭnis, n., *a pliant twig, withe, osier.*

vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind.*

vinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *to conquer, be victorious* : **vincite**=*have your own way.*

vinculum, i, n., *a chain, bond, fetters.* [vincio.]

vindĭco, are, avi, atum, *claim, demand*; *set free, liberate*; *avenge, revenge, take vengeance on* or *for*; *punish.*

vīnea, ae, f., *a vinea, mantlet, penthouse, shed*, a shelter used during sieges to protect the men engaged in using the battering-ram and other engines. [vinum.]

vīnum, i, n., *wine.*

vĭŏlo, āre, avi, atum, *to do violence to, injure.* [vis.]

vĭr, viri, m., *a man, a husband.*

vīres, v. vis.

virgo, inis, f., *a maiden.*

virgultum, i, n., *brushwood, underwood, thicket.*

virītim, adv., *man by man, individually.* [vir.]

virtūs, ūtis, f., *manliness*; *bravery, courage, valor*; *worth, virtue.* [vir.]

vīs, acc. **vim**, abl. **vi**. f., in sing., *violence, force, power*; plur. **vires, virium**, etc., *bodily strength.*

vīsus. See **video**,

vīta, ae, f., *life.* [vivo.]

vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, *to avoid, evade.*

vitrum, i, n., *woad.*

vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum, *to live.*

vīvus, a, um, adj., *alive, living.* [vivo.]

vix, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty*; *barely.*

vōbīs, see vos.

vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call, invite, challenge.*

vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi, *to wish, will, be willing.*

vŏluntārĭus, a, um, adj., *willing, of one's own free will*: subst., **voluntarii**, ōrum, m., *volunteers.* [voluntas.]

vŏluntās, ātis, f., *will, free-will, inclination, disposition.*

vŏluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure.*

vōs, plur. of **tu**, pron. pers., *you.*

vŏvĕo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow, to promise solemnly.*

vox, vōcis, f., *a voice, cry.*

vulgo, adv., *commonly, generally.* [vulgus.]

vulgus, i, (usually n., occasionally m., but not in Caesar) *the mass of the people, the people, the public.*

vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wound, injure* by a wound. [vulnus.]

vulnus, ĕris, n., *a wound.*

vultus, ūs, m., *countenance, expression of the face, look.* [volo, lit. "the wish as expressed in the face."]

ADDENDA.

ad-figo, *V.* af-figo.
ad-fingo, *V.* af-fingo.
ad-gredior, *V.* ag-gredior.
ad-licio, *V.* al-licio.
ad-paro, *V.* ap-paro.
ad-pello, *V.* ap-pello.
a-mens, ntis, adj., *mad, senseless.*
ap-portò, *V.* ad-porto.

caelum, i. n., *heaven, sky.*
caedo, ĕre, cecīdi, caesum, *cut, kill.*
celer, eris, ere, adj., *swift.*
circumduco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *lead around.*
clēmens, ntis, adj., *gentle, kind.*
colligo, are, avi, atum, *bind together* (ligo); distinguish fr. colligo, ĕre.
cōmĭnus, adv., *in close combat* [con, manus].
contego, ĕre, xi, ctum, *cover up.*
continentia, ae, f., *self-restraint.*
culmen, minis, n., *summit, top, roof.*

dens, ntis, m., *tooth.*
densus, a, um, adj., *thick.*
divulgo, are, avi, atum, *spread abroad.*
dorsum, i. n., *a back; ridge.*
duplex, ĭcis, adj., *two-fold* [plico].

ĕquĭdem, *indeed.*
ex-cīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cisum, *cut out.*
ex-curro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *make a sally.*

fons, ntis, m., *fountain, spring.*

gaesum, i. n., *a Celtic javelin.*
glorior, ari, atus sum, *glory in, boast of.*
grandis, e, adj., *large.*

humānitās, ātis, f., *civilization; refinement.*

ideo, adv., *therefore.*
includo, ĕre, clusi, clusum, *shut in.*
incuso, are, avi, atum, *upbraid, rebuke.*

indulgentia, ae, f., *indulgence.*
intro, adv., *inwards.*
invīcem, adv., *in turn.*
iussu, adv., *by order.*

languidus. a, um, adj., *feeble, spiritless.*
lignum, i. n., *wood.*

mălĕ, adv., *badly.*
mūlio, ōnis, m., *mule-driver.*
mūto, are, avi, atum, *change.*

nauticus, a, um, adj., *naval.*

occurso, are, avi, atum, *rush to meet.*
ociter, adv. compar., ocius, *swiftly.*

paries, ĕtis, m., *a house wall.*
patienter, adv., *patiently, with endurance.*
penna, *V.* pinna.
perfidus, a, um, adj., *perfidious.*
pertimesco, ĕre, timui, *fear intensely.*
proruo, ĕre, rui, rutum, *dash down, overthrow.*

quamdiu, adv. and conj., *how long, as long.*
quotidianus, *V.* Cotidianus.

rebellio, ōnis, f., *a renewal of war.*

saepes, is, f., *a hedge.*
satis, adv., *enough.*
sīcubi, conj., *if anywhere.*
signifer, *standard-bearer.*
simulo, are, avi, atum, *pretend.*
sincerē, adv., *honestly, truly.*
stabilitās, -ātis, *steadiness* [sto, *stand*].
suf-fodio, *V.* sub-fodio.

vallus, i. m., *a stake.*

EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION

BASED ON BOOK V.

N.B.—The first five Exercises are based on Chapter 1.

Exercise 1.

Cases.

1. Lucius and Appius are consuls ; Lucius is consul.

2. Lucius (being) consul, Caesar sets out for hither Gaul.

3. In the consulship of Lucius and Appius, Caesar set out (Historical Pres.) from the army (*exercitus*, -*ūs*) into Italy.

4. He puts Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta, (his) lieutenants in-charge-of the army.

5. To these lieutenants he-gives-orders (*impero*) that they should build (*facere*) a fleet (*classis*).

6. They will build ships and repair the old (ones).

7. These ships Caesar will use against (*contra*) Britain (*Britannia*).

8. They make the ships low and broad.

9. The Romans use in the Mediterranean high and narrow ships.

10. In the Ocean the Gauls use lower and wider vessels than (those) which the Romans are accustomed to employ.

11. Many things were useful to the lieutenants.

Exercise 2.

Abl. Absol.

1. Caesar left (*discedo*) for Britain, when Pompeius and Crassus were consuls.

2. The assizes have been held ; I will now (*iam*) set out for Italy.

3. After holding the assizes, Caesar returns (*revertor*, 3) to the army.

4. Part of the province had been laid waste by the Gauls. This part having been devastated, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.

5. These things were reported. These (rel. pron.) things having been reported to Caesar, he ordered (*impero*) hostages.

6. He gave-orders-to the Gauls (for) many hostages.

7. These speeches were delivered (*habeo*). When these speeches had been delivered (part. phrase), Caesar replied (*respondeo, -di*).

Exercise 3.

Acc. with Inf.—Tenses of the Inf.

1. The province was being ravaged. He kept-hearing that the province was being ravaged.

2. Part has already (*iam*) been devastated by the enemy. They heard (perf.) that this part had already been laid waste by the soldiers of the enemy.

3. Caesar will pursue them with war. Caesar made-clear that he would pursue them with war and ravage their lands.

4. They heard (from time to time) that Caesar was coming (*venio*, 4) that his lieutenants had built ships and that he would demand hostages.

5. Caesar believed (*credo, credidi*) that the Pirustae had done all these things (neut. pl.) as a matter of public policy.

6. He learned (*cognosco, cognovi*) that they were ready to give satisfaction.

7. Caesar said that he would, after hostages were sent (abl. abs.), appoint (=give) assessors.

Exercise 4.

Iubeo and Impero.

1. He ordered them to build ships and repair the old ones (use *iubeo*).

2. He gives orders to Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta that they build ships and repair the old ones.

3. He orders ships to be built (use (a) *iubeo* (b) *impero*; with *impero* use either *ut* or *inf.*)*

4. He orders hostages from the Pirustae (use *impero*. and dat. of person receiving the order).

5. He bids them bring the hostages to himself.

Sequence of Tenses.

6. It was Caesar's custom to order (express by proper tense of *impero*.) conquered (*victus, -a, -um*) states to give hostages.

7. He had ordered that these should be brought to him.

8. The lieutenants gave orders (historical present) to the men (*miles*) to build the ships low and broad.

9. He will give orders for the repairing of the ships (="that the ships be repaired").

---

* *Impero* may take the infin. in passive.

10. He has given orders for the old ships to be repaired and new ones to be constructed by the soldiers over-whom he has placed the lieutenants.

11. Bid the man come. Command the man to come.

Exercise 5.

Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Great was the speed of loading these vessels.

2. They were low for-the-purpose-of (*ad*) loading.

3. The cause of building (them) was this. Caesar wished to cross (*transire*) to Britain.

4. What things (n. pl.) were required (*usui esse*) for building the ships (Gerundive), were brought from Spain.

5. Many things are necessary (*usui*) for repairing a fleet.

6. He bids the lieutenants see-to (*curo*) the equipping of a fleet.

7. Caesar bids the ambassadors see that hostages are brought.

8. A fleet was fitted out for the sake of crossing to Britain (use *causā* after its case).

9. He goes to Gaul to hold the assizes (*conventus agere;* use *ad* and Gerundive).

Exercise 6.

Review.

These ships having been built and equipped and the assizes being over, he returns (*revertor*) to the army. When he had arrived there he found (*invenio*) XXVIII war ships (*naves longae*) built (*instruo, instructum*) and six hundred others fitted out. Having praised the soldiers (use passive partl.) he ordered all to assemble at (*convenire ad*) the ocean, because he had learnt (*cognosco, -novi*) that there was a short (*brevis*) passage (*traiectus*) to Britain. He himself with four legions sets out for the Treveri because he had heard that they were not coming to the councils (*concilium*).

Exercise 7.

(See Chapter 1 and 2).

In the following year, when Lucius and Appius were consuls, Caesar prepared again to cross to Britain. In the winter he ordered his lieutenants to see that a fleet (*classis*) was built and fitted out (*armo*). After holding the assizes he sets out to the Pirustae because he heard they were laying waste that part of the Roman Province which bordered on (*attingo*) Illyricum. Having received the submission of the Pirustae (*the P. having been received into surrender*) and having appointed (*do, dare*) assessors among them, he returns to the coast (*ora maritima*) where (*ubi*) he finds many ships built and old ones repaired.

Exercise 8.

(See Chapter 2, 3 and 4).

Having ordered all the ships to assemble at Portus Itius, he leads four legions against the Treveri, who were defying his authority (*imperio non parēre*) and stirring up the Germans. Of this state there were two chiefs, Indutiomarus and Cingetorix. One of these, learning of Caesar's approach, surrenders to Caesar, and is received as a friend (*into friendship*). The other, Indutiomarus, at first (*primo*) endeavored to resist (Dative) Caesar, gathering (*perf. pass. participle*) all his (people) into the woods. But being frightened by Caesar's arrival, he offered to surrender unconditionally, (*said he was willing to entrust himself and his fortunes to his honor* (*fides*). Nevertheless Caesar, after receiving hostages from Indutiomarus, made Cingetorix head of the Treveri (*conciliated the chiefs of the T. to C.*); at which the former (*ille*) was very indignant (*bore grievously*).

Exercise 9.

1. The chieftains of the Treveri were not able to consult the interests of their states, so (*itaque*) looked out for themselves.

2. It was of great interest to Caesar that a friend should rule over (*impero*, with Dat.) the Treveri.

3. Indutiomarus feared that all would desert him (= himself).

4. Caesar feared that Indutiomarus would not be a friend (see F. 185, 3, 4; P. II., 154).

5. Indutiomarus did not come to Caesar, in order that the state might be the more easily kept loyal (*in officio*).

6. What (*plur.*) is going on among the Treveri? Cingetorix will make known (*ostendo*) to Caesar what is going on.

7. I and all my (people) will be loyal, nor will we desert (*deficio ab*) the friendship of the Roman people.

Exercise 10.

(See latter part of Chapter 3).

It-is-for-that-reason-that I am not leaving my friends and am unwilling to come to you. I wish to maintain the loyalty of my state and I fear lest the common people may slip. Consequently the state is at my disposal and I will, if you permit me (fut. indic), come to you in your camp and put myself and my state in your hands (*entrust myself to your honor*).

Exercise 11.

(See Chapter 5).

1. Caesar's legions had reached the harbor.

2. Fifty war-ships built in the territories of the Meldae, had been driven back by storms and had not (*neque*) been able to reach this harbor. They returned to their starting point.

3. The rest were ready for sailing and were equipped with all things.

4. Those, whose loyalty he felt sure of (*confido* with abl.), he left in Gaul. The rest he took with him as hostages.

5. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, especially he wished to have along with him.

Exercise 12.

(See Chapter 6).

1. The Aeduans resented (*graviter fero*) the statement of Dumnorix.

2. We dare not send ambassadors to protest (*deprecor*).

3. Dumnorix begged to be left behind, on the ground that he feared the passage across (*navigatio*).

4. Those who are unaccustomed to sailing always fear the sea.

5. I advise you to remain on (dry) land and not (*neu*) to cross with Caesar.

6. "Not without a reason does it happen that Gaul is being robbed of its chieftains. Caesar's policy is to kill us in Britain. He is afraid to do it in sight of our friends. Pledge (give) me your oath that you will remain in Gaul."

Exercise 13.

(See Chapter 7).

1. Caesar, learning these things, decided to check Dumnorix.

2. I must check Dumnorix at all costs.

3. His madness has already gone too far. He will do me and the State harm.

4. The N.W. wind blows nearly all the time on the coast of Gaul.

5. Caesar will exert himself to maintain-the-loyalty-of Dumnorix (*keep D. in his duty*).

6. When the men (not *homines*) had embarked, he left for home.

7. Caesar orders him either to be brought back or to be slain.

8. Those who were sent to pursue him (*causā* with gerundive) surrounded him and, when he resisted (pres. participle), slew him.

9. In the absence of Caesar, Dumnorix acted in no way as a sane man.

10. I am free and I belong to a free state.

Exercise 14.

(See Chapter 8).

1. He did these things (use *gero*), and left Labienus in Gaul.

2. Having left legions and cavalry on the continent, he set sail at sunset.

3. At day-break he found out that he had left Britain behind on the left.

4. Having been carried on too far by the wind and tide, the ships followed the change of tide and reached the island.

5. On this part of the island he had landed the summer before.

6. He knew that these regions were excellent for landing.

7. The soldiers by not relaxing (perf. participle) their efforts (*labor*) reached the island by rowing the same day.

8. At noon the enemy saw Caesar's ships approaching and, panic-stricken, they left the shore for the woods.

Exercise 15.

(See Chapter 8).

Purpose expressed by ut.

1. Labienus was left behind to guard the coast.

2. He left soldiers to provide corn.

3. They strove to reach the island.

4. We shall strive to equal the speed of the war-galleys.

5. We are exerting ourselves to learn (*cognosco*) many things.

Indirect Question.

6. What was being done in Gaul? Labienus saw what was being done.

7. What (sing.) has Caesar done (*gero*)? We learn what he did when he had crossed into Britain.

8. What had the enemy seen? They were frightened at what (those things which) they had seen. They told their chiefs what they had seen.

9. In what place have the enemy encamped? (*consido, -sedi*).

10. He ascertained in what place they had encamped.

Exercise 16.

(See Chapter 9).

1. Caesar landed his army and selected a site suitable for a camp. The army landed after 12 o'clock (noon).

2. I will leave ten cohorts and 300 cavalry as a guard for the camp.

3. Quintus had been appointed in command of that part of his army which he was leaving at the sea.

4. After mooring the ships at anchor and appointing Atrius in command, he hastened in pursuit of the enemy's forces.

5. The enemy, fearing Caesar, advanced to the river in their chariots and there joined battle.

6. Having advanced and joined battle, they were driven back to the woods.

7. Finding a suitable place, they hid themselves in the woods.

8. A "testudo" was formed by our soldiers and a mound was thrown up. These things having been done, the place was captured.

9. Caesar's cavalry did not pursue the fleeing enemy too far, because a great part of the day had already (*iam*) been spent in landing and fighting.

10. The enemy were driven from the woods no wound having been received by our men.

Exercise 17.

(See Chapter 10.)

1. Next day soldiers were sent to pursue the enemy.

2. The army having advanced some distance, it was reported that a storm had arisen and wrecked the ships.

3. The ships have been cast up on shore, because they could not withstand the force of the storm.

4. The ships having been wrecked and cast up on shore, great inconvenience was caused.

5. Caesar writes (*scribo*) to his lieutenants to send workmen (*faber.*)

Exercise 18.

(See Chapter 11.)

1. Caesar, having learnt of the storm, called back his men from the pursuit (use Gerund) and hastened to the shore.

2. There he found that about forty ships had been lost and that the rest were badly damaged (*affligo*).

3. To Labienus he wrote to send workmen from the continent, and to build (*aedifico*) as many ships as possible with the remaining legions.

4. This was not a matter of much difficulty.

5. Meanwhile Caesar, after hauling up those ships which had not been lost, fortified both ships and camp with one rampart.

6. Having spent ten days in fortifying, he again started out in-pursuit-of (*ad*) the enemy, leaving a few (*pauci*) soldiers to protect the fortification which he had constructed.

7. Having reached the place (use a *cum* clause) where the enemy were, he learned that large forces had assembled and that the supreme command had been given to (*permitto*) Cassivellaunus, chieftain of those tribes which

border-upon (*attingo*) the Thames. Now (*autem*) between Cassivellaunus and the other (*reliqui*) tribes there had hitherto been unceasing warfare. Our arrival however stirred-up (*permoveo*) the Britons to appointing him (gerundive) in charge of the whole war.

Exercise 19.

(See Chapters 12, 13 and 14).

1. Those who have been born in the island itself inhabit the interior of Britain.

2. Those who inhabit the maritime district had their origin in the states of Belgium.

3. The Britons use gold, brass, iron, timber, (and) tin.

4. Of these some are found in the island, others are imported.

5. Those who inhabit Belgium are called Belgae.

6. They bring their ships to port at Kent.

7. He has been called a friend.

8. The ships have been brought to port.

9. Caesar sailed westward and northward.

10. The natives, looking southward, saw Caesar approaching.

11. Britain is half as large again as Ireland.

12. They call the island which lies midway between Britain and Ireland Mona.

13. The Kentish people (inhabitants of Kent) are very much like the Gauls, and most-of-them live on corn. Those-of-the-interior are more like the Germans, living (as they do) on milk and flesh. The *woad*, with which they all stain their bodies, produces a dark blue color. In war they are of a horrible appearance and go (*esse*) with flowing hair.

Exercise 20.

(See Chapters 15 and 16).

1. Our men, having advanced some distance (*aliquantum itineris*), engaged the enemy and drove them into the woods.

2. Again, however, the enemy rushed from the woods and made an attack upon our camp.

3. Caesar sent to the rescue the first cohorts of two legions, but our men became frightened by the enemy's mode of fighting.

4. The enemy, after killing a military tribune, broke through and fled.

5. In this battle the Britons would fall back a little way, leap from their chariots and fight on foot.

6. In constant succession they would relieve one another so that they were always fresh.

Exercise 21.

(See Chapter 17).

1. Next day our men were provoked to battle by the enemy, who displayed themselves on the hills.

2. Three legions and all the cavalry had been sent by Caesar for the purpose of foraging.

3. An attack was made upon the enemy by our men.

4. The enemy having been repulsed by this attack, were driven headlong by the cavalry.

5. A great number of them were slain.

6. No opportunity was given them of making a stand or fighting.

Exercise 22.

(See Chapter 18).

1. Caesar had ascertained their plans. Having ascertained their plans.

2. Having led his army to the Thames, he observed that this river was fordable only in one place.

3. Large forces had been drawn up on the other bank, which moreover had been protected by stakes both fixed in front and driven down beneath the water.

4. The cavalry was sent forward and the legions were ordered to follow up.

5. The enemy could not withstand the attack of the legions.

6. Having quit the banks they committed themselves to flight.

Exercise 23.

(See Chapter 19).

1. Cassivellaunus laid aside all hope of keeping up the struggle and disbanded his forces.

2. With a few however he watched the movements of the Romans from neighboring (*proximus*) hills.

3. Our army will make its way through these regions.

4. He learned that Caesar would direct his course with a view to plundering and devastating.

5. This fear prevented the Romans from spreading (*eicere se*) over the fields too freely.

6. Caesar did not suffer his (men) to depart too far.

7. Having devastated the land and made fires he kept (*retineo*) his men in camp.

8. By these things we can injure the Britons most and no harm can be done us (it-cannot-be-harmed).

Exercise 24.

(See Chapter 20).

1. Mandubratius came from the Trinobantes to Caesar on the continent.

2. He knew (*intellego*) that his own father, who had held the sovereignty, had been slain.

3. The Trinobantes, having sent envoys, surrender to Caesar.

4. We will surrender to you and do your bidding.

5. We ask you to protect our young chief.

6. He who had been-at-the-head-of the state (*praesum*, with dat.) had been slain.

7. Caesar sent them (a man) to take charge (use Relative of Purpose).

8. He promised to send them (some one) to hold authority.

Exercise 25.

(See Chapter 21).

1. Now that this state has been protected (use perf. participle and abl. abs.) the remaining (ones) will send embassies and surrender.

2. Not far distant is a town into which men and cattle will gather.

3. Impassable woods had been fortified by ramparts and trenches.

4. Thither they assemble for the purpose of avoiding Caesar.

5. When the enemy had rushed (*se eicere*) out of the town, many were slain.

6. Caesar, having tarried on the island a little while, returned (*se recipere*) to the continent.

Exercise 26.

(See Chapter 22).

1. Four kings preside over Kent.

2. These kings gathering an army suddenly assaulted the camp.

3. Caesar learned that his (men) had made a rally and that many of the enemy had been slain.

4. Cassivellaunus heard that his territories had been ravaged.

5. This battle had been reported to Cassivellaunus.

6. Caesar knew that he could easily drag out the remaining part of the summer.

7. I enjoin upon you not to hurt my allies (*socii*).

Exercise 27.

(See Chapter 23).

1. Having led his army to the naval camp, he launched the ships.

2. Caesar carried back his soldiers and prisoners from Britain in two trips.

3. The ships, after carrying over the first lot, were returning (being sent back) along with the seventy ships built by Labienus.

4. A storm having arisen (*coorior*) very few of these reached (their) destination.

5. Caesar waited some time for these, and then (*deinde*) stowing his men more closely, he crossed in one night with the second lot. Thus (*ita*) was concluded Caesar's second war with the Britons.

Exercise 28.

(See Chapter 24).

1. When Caesar had returned to the continent he stationed his eight legions, for the purpose of wintering, in several (different) states.

2. This he was compelled to do by the scarcity of corn.

3. Quintus Cicero, brother of Marcus the orator, was sent with one legion into the Nervii.

4. One legion, over which Sabinus and Cotta were in command, was ordered to winter among the Eburones.

5. Along with this legion five other cohorts were stationed.

Exercise 29.

(See Chapter 25).

1. The kingdom of the Carnutes had been restored by Caesar to Tasgetius.

2. He was slain by his enemies in the third year of his reign.

3. This occurrence having been reported to Caesar, he sent Plancus into this state for-the-purpose-of (*ad*) wintering there and apprehending the slayers of Tasgetius (those who had slain).

4. Meanwhile all his lieutenants, to whom legions had been assigned, informed him that they had reached their winter quarters.

Exercise 30.

(See Chapters 26 and 27).

1. Within fifteen days a revolt broke out among the Eburones at the instigation of the two chieftains (the two chieftains being instigators).

2. Our men gained an advantage in a cavalry fight and the enemy withdrew from the camp.

3. Then the enemy said they wished to hold a conference and to settle the dispute.

4. In this conference Ambiorix said that he owed gratitude to Caesar, and had attacked the camp not by his own will but by the compulsion of the state.

5. He urged (*suadēre ut*) the lieutenants (Dat.) to lead out their men and hasten to Labienus.

Exercise 31.

(See Chapters 28-31).

1. These things having been laid before Cotta and Sabinus, a great dispute arose.

2. Cotta wished to remain in the camp and await reinforcements from Caesar. Sabinus thought they ought to depart (use Gerundive).

3. The matter having been prolonged till midnight, the opinion of Cotta was overborne (*supero*) by Sabinus.

4. At day-break they left camp.

Exercise 32.

(See Chapters 32-35).

1. The enemy placed an ambuscade in a valley.

2. When our column had advanced into this valley, the enemy made an attack on front and rear and threw them into great confusion (*magno opere perturbare*).

3 In this battle, Sabinus, who had been the promoter of the departure from camp, acted timidly; Cotta alone discharged the duties of commander.

4. Sabinus had foreseen none of those things that happened; Cotta had thought-of (*cogito*) everything.

5. The Romans, abandoning (perf. part.) their baggage, formed (*consisto*) into a circle.

6. The barbarians, thinking that all things depended upon victory, made no attempt (*non conari*) to seize the plunder left by the Roman soldiers, but hurled missiles from afar. Whenever the Romans charged (pluperf. ind.), they would retire.

7. Then (*deinde*) when the Romans were returning to the circle, they would surround them.

8. Thus they fought from early dawn till two o'clock in the afternoon.

Exercise 33.

(See Chapters 36-37).

1. Titurius sent a messenger (*nuntius*) to the leader of the enemy and asked him to spare the Romans.

2. Ambiorix replied that Sabinus might (it was permitted to), if he wished, come to a conference (Supine of Purpose).

3. When Sabinus had asked Cotta to withdraw from the battle in company with him, and confer with the Gallic chieftain, Cotta refused to go (said he would not).

4. Sabinus went, several tribunes and centurions following him.

5. These, having thrown away their arms, are surrounded and slain.

6. The enemy, again charging upon the ranks of the Romans, slew Cotta.

7. A few of the Romans who had returned to the camp slew themselves.

8. Sabinus was informed of what had happened by soldiers who escaped through the woods.

Exercise 34.

(See Chapters 38-40.)

1. After slaying Sabinus and Cotta, Ambiorix stirred up the Nervii to crush (*opprimo*) Cicero and his legion.

2. All hope of the Nervii and their alliies depended on quickness.

3. Cicero however held out throughout the first day.

4. Having dispatched a letter to Caesar, he built (*excito*) many towers with great speed on the rampart of the camp.

5. Next day, when the camp had been assaulted by the enemy and the trench filled up (*use abl. absol.*), our men again resisted bravely.

6. For several days thereafter they held out.

Exercise 35.

(See Chapters 41-43.)

1. Then, when several chieftains of the Nervii had come into Cicero's camp and were urging (*persuadeo*) him to leave for other parts, he replied that he could not accept terms from them (when) under arms.

2. The Nervii thought that, when he had left camp, they would easily crush his whole army and kill him.

3. Cicero's reply having been received, they surrounded his camp with rampart and trench and hoped that they would thus compel (*cogo*) him to surrender.

4. On the seventh day, they again attacked the camp and brought into action towers, pent-houses and scaling ladders (use only one verb).

5. But so great was the valour of our men that on this day also the enemy were repulsed, many of (=out of) their number being wounded and slain.

Exercise 36.

(See Chapters 45-48.)

1. Several messengers having been sent in vain, a slave, who was a Gaul, brought a letter to Caesar.

2. Caesar, learning of Cicero's danger, immediately sends messengers to Crassus, Fabius and Labienus and bids them come with their legions to Cicero's camp.

3. Crassus and Fabius do as they were ordered, but Labienus sends a letter in which he describes (*prescribo*) his own danger and says he cannot (*nego*) leave his winter camp.

4. Caesar, with the two legions which he had received from Crassus and Fabius, hastens by forced marches into the territories of the Nervii.

5. A Gallic horseman takes a letter from Caesar to Cicero but fearing the Nervii, throws it tied to a spear, into the camp.

6. The spear stuck to a tower and the letter was not observed before the third day.

7. Cicero calling a meeting of the soldiers, reads (*recito*) the letter and great is the joy of all when Caesar's approach is learned.

Exercise 37.

(See Chapters 49-52.)

1. Cicero asks from Vertico the man who brought the letter to Caesar's camp.

2. Give me a soldier whom I may send with this letter.

3. At midnight the letter was brought to Caesar and he hastened to set out towards the enemy.

4. The place where he encamped was as favorable as possible, but the camp which he fortified was as contracted as possible.

5. The valleys can easily be crossed by this route.

6. Caesar the next day, by a pretence of fear, enticed the enemy to battle in front of the camp in a most unfavorable place.

7. Some were tearing down the rampart with their hands, some were filling up the ditches.

8. But Caesar ordered a sally to be made and the cavalry to be let loose.

9. The enemy did not resist and large numbers of them were cut down (*occīdo*).

10. Caesar then pushed on to the camp of Cicero and entered (*intro, are*) it to the great joy ("with great joy") of the soldiers.

Exercise 38.

(See Chapters 53-55.)

1. In nine hours word-was-brought (*perfero*, used impersonally) to Labienus that Caesar had defeated the Nervii and had entered Cicero's camp.

2. Frightened by this news, Indutiomarus fled by night with all his forces without attacking the camp of Labienus (use abl. abs.).

3. Caesar, sending back Fabius, remained throughout the rest of that winter with his army in the vicinity of Samarobriva.

4. Some of the Gauls were held to their allegiance by intimidation and some by advice, but nearly all the states were suspected by Caesar (*objects of suspicion to*).

5. Indutiomarus all this winter kept trying to stir up the Germans, but was not however (use *neque*) able to persuade them to cross the Rhine.

6. Many Gauls, however, he succeeded in (*efficio ut*) inducing to flock to his standard (*concurro ad.*)

Exercise 39.

(See Chapters 56-58.)

1. Indutiomarus, calling an armed council, delivered a speech and declared his intention of attacking Labienus' camp (use only one verb).

2. Labienus kept to his camp and Indutiomarus came every day and tried to increase his fear.

3. At last Labienus, having admitted certain Gallic horsemen and strengthened the idea that he was afraid (*the impression of fear*) suddenly ordered a sally and let loose all his cavalry.

4. Fortune smiled on (*comprobo*) his plans, for Indutiomarus was slain and all his army was put to flight.

5. Learning these things, the Nervii and Eburones who had assembled, dispersed, and Gaul became more quiet.

APPENDICES A AND B,

CONTAINING WORD-LISTS AND PASSAGES FOR SIGHT TRANSLATION, ALTHOUGH ORIGINALLY COMPILED FOR USE WITH BOOKS II, III AND IV, WILL BE FOUND USEFUL IN CONNECTION WITH BOOKS V AND VI.

TORONTO, January, 1898.

APPENDIX A.

WORDS AND PHRASES FOR MEMORIZING.

NOTE.—The student should learn the principal parts of all verbs and the inflection of nouns and adjectives.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER 1.

creber, frequent, numerous.
certiorem facio, I inform.
certior fio, I am informed.
coniuro, conspire ; *coniuratio*, conspiracy.
obses, hostage.
inter se dare, exchange.
primum, in the first place.
deinde, in the second place ; afterwards.
vereor, I fear.
nonnulli, some, several.
sollicito, stir up, instigate.
partim, partly—*pars* (f.), a part.
hiemo, I winter ; *hiems*, winter ; *hiberna*, winter quarters.
moleste or *graviter fero*, I am annoyed.
studeo (dat.) I am eager for—fond of.
imperium, rule, power, command.

CHAPTER 2.

nuntius, message or messenger.
litterae, letter or letters.
conscribo, enrol, enlist.
inita aestate, at the beginning of summer.
cum primum, as soon as, when first.
copia, plenty, supply ; *copiae*, (1) stores, (2) forces.
finitimus, neighbouring.
apud (acc.), among, with, near.

ea geruntur, these things are going on.
cognosco, I learn ; *cognovi*, I know.
nuntio, report, announce.
manus (fem.), (1) hand, (2) band or force.
cogo, (1) gather, collect, (2) compel.
existimo, *arbitror*, think.
proficiscor, set out.
res frumentaria, *frumentum*, corn supply, corn.
castra moveo, move camp.
castra pono, pitch camp.
circiter, about (with numerals), —*de*, about, concerning.

Learn the cardinal and ordinal numerals up to *twenty*.

CHAPTER 3.

Eo cum venisset, having arrived there, on his arrival there.
de improviso, unexpectedly.
subito, suddenly.
celerius opinione, sooner than expected.
proximus, next, nearest.
civis, citizen.
civitas, state.
mitto, send.
legatus, (1) envoy, ambassador, (2) deputy, lieutenant.
in fidem permitto, entrust to the care or honour of.
Belgae reliqui, the rest of the Belgae.
consentio, agree, join with (*cum*, expressed).
paratus dare, ready to give.
imperata facere, do one's bidding.
iuvo (acc.), aid.
ceteri, *reliqui*, the rest of, remaining, all other.
in armis esse, to be under arms.
neque, (1) neither, nor, (2) and not=*et non*, sometimes, (3) but not= *sed non*.
incŏlo, dwell.
ne—quĭdem, not even.
utor, (1) use, (2) observe (customs), (3) show or display (zeal, etc.).
magistratus, (1) magistrate, (2) office.

CHAPTER 4.

quaero ab, or *ex*, enquire of.
peto ab, seek from.

rogo (acc), ask, ask for.
quis, or *qui* (interrog.), which, what, or who?
quantus, how great?
quot, how many?
reperio, find out, discover (after searching or enquiring).
cognosco, find out, become aware, learn.
invenio, find, come upon (not implying search).
propter (acc), on account of.
consido, settle.
is locus, that place; *ea loca*, those places.
expello, expel.
solus, alone, only.
patrum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers.
finis (m. or f.), end, limit; *fines* (m.) territories, boundaries.
res militaris, military matters.
concilium or *consilium*, a council, deliberative assembly.
consilium, counsel, plan, design, policy.
polliceor, promise.
plurimum navibus valēre, to be strongest in ships.
conficio, (1) complete, (2) bring to an end.
Learn the cardinal *tens* to *centum*.
imperium or *summam totius belli*, chief command.
imperium obtinēre, hold command.
appello, *are*, I call; *appello*, *ĕre*, bring a ship to port.

CHAPTER 5.

cohortor, exhort, encourage.
convenire, assemble.
līberi, children.
adduco, bring.
iubeo (acc. and infin.), *impero* (dat. and *ut*), order, command; *iubeo* also means "to bid."
doceo, teach, tell, inform.
magno opere, greatly; *quanto opere*, how greatly.
interest (gen.), it is important to, it is in the interest of.
populor, *vasto*, devastate, lay waste, ravage.
coepi, begin or began.
dimitto, dismiss.
postquam vēnit, after he came.
cum venisset, when he had come.
ubi vēnit, when he came.

postea, *post*, afterwards.
longe (or *multum*) *abest*, it is far distant.
explorator, scout.
lătus, side ; *lātus*, wide.
munio, fortify, protect.
ripa, bank.
commeatus, supplies.
pons (m.), bridge.
praesidium, guard, garrison, detachment.
relinquo, I leave behind.
discedo, *excedo*, I leave, depart.
vallum, rampart.
fossa, ditch.
pēs, foot ; *pĕdĕs*, foot-soldier.

CHAPTER 6.

impetus, (1) an attack, charge, (2) rush, impetuosity, force.
ex itinere, on the march.
oppugno, assault ; *expugno*, take by storm, capture.
sustineo, hold out, resist.
oppugnatio, siege.
murus, town wall ; *vallum*, rampart ; *moenia*, fortifications.
lapis (m.), stone.
munitiones, lines, works, fortifications.
testudo, (1) shelter of shields, (2) a shed.
tela conicere, hurl weapons.
praesum (dat.), I am at the head of, in charge of.
praeficio, I appoint in charge of (acc. of person, dat. of thing).
de pace, concerning peace.

CHAPTER 7.

media nox, mid-night.
dux (1) leader, (2) guide.
subsidium, support.
adventus, arrival.
studium, zeal.
eā de causā, for that reason.
spes, hope.
itaque, therefore, accordingly, consequently.
moror, *ari*, *moratus*, to delay ; *morior*, *mori*, *mortuus*, to die.
vicus, village.

adeo, visit, go to.
contendo, hasten.

CHAPTER 8.

statuo, *constituo*, resolve.
proelium, battle.
intellego, perceive.
aciem instruo, draw up line of battle.
idoneus, suitable.
collis, (m.) hill.
paulisper, a little while.
paululum, a little.
paulatim, gradually.
utrumque lătus, both sides.
circumvenio, surround.
opus est, there is need of (abl. of thing needed).
pro castris, in front of the camp.
constituo, (1) resolve, determine, (2) station.

CHAPTER 9.

palus, (f.) marsh.
inter, (acc.), between.
transeo, cross.
exspecto, (1) wait for, (2) wait to see.
impedītus, encumbered, embarrassed.
expedītus, light-armed, lightly equipped.
aggredior, *adorior*, attack, assail.
proelium equestre, cavalry fight.
secundus, favourable, successful.
vădum, ford.
conor, attempt.
magno usui nobis est, it is of great advantage to us.
prohibeo, prevent.

CHAPTER 10.

equĕs, *itis*, horseman ; *equus*, horse.
equites (pl.), *equitatus* (sing.), cavalry.
pedĕs, foot-soldier ; *pes*, foot.
pedites (pl.), *peditatus* (sing.), infantry.
pugnatum est, they fought.
occīdo, kill ; *occĭdo*, fall.

interficio, kill.
lŏcus inīquus, unfavourable place.
progredior, advance.
intellego, perceive ; *video*, see.
deficio, (1) fail, (2) revolt.
convŏco, assemble, call together.
convenio, assemble, come together.
quisque, each.
revertor, *redeo*, return.
undique, from all parts.
auxilium fero (dat.), bring aid to.

CHAPTER 11.

castris egredior, leave camp.
ordo, rank, order.
pervenire ad, arrive at.
fuga, flight.
videor, seem.
statim, *confestim*, at once, immediately.
quā de causā, for what reason.
primā luce, at day-break.
confirmo, (1) confirm, strengthen, encourage, (2) declare, affirm.
novissimum agmen, rear of the column.
primum agmen, the van.
clamor, shout.
occasus solis, sun-set.
se recipere, (1) betake one's self, retire, (2) recover one's self.

CHAPTER 12.

magnum iter, a forced march.
pauci, few.
vinea, mantlet, small shed.
quae usui sunt, those things which are useful or necessary.
vineam ago, I bring up the mantlets.
aggerem, a mound or raised platform.
turris, tower.
deditio, a surrender ; *dēdo*, I surrender.
impetro, obtain a wish ; *impero*, command.

CHAPTER 13.

arma, -orum, arms.
in deditionem accipere, receive the surrender of.

trado, hand over.
absum, am distant.
maior natu, older man.
egredior, go out.
in fidem venire, place one's self under protection.
mulier, *ĕris*, woman ; *vir*, man ; *puer*, boy or child.
mos, *moris*, custom ; *mores* (pl.), habits, manners, character.

CHAPTER 14.

princeps, (1) chieftain, (2) author, ring-leader, instigator.
deficio, revolt ; fall away, fail.
bellum infero (dat.), make war upon.
bellum gero, carry on war.
non solun—sed etiam, not only—but also.
auctoritas, influence.

CHAPTER 15.

honoris causā, out of respect to.
recipio, receive again ; *accipio*, receive.
posco, demand.
confero, collect, bring together.
aditus, access, approach.
mercātor, trader.
patior, suffer, allow.
vinum, wine.
infero, import.
virtus, courage.

CHAPTER 16.

iter facio, I march.
captīvus, prisoner.
adventus, *ūs*, arrival.
uterque, both (individuals) ; *utrique*, both (parties).
aetas, age ; *aestas*, summer ; *aestus*, tide.
palus, marsh.

CHAPTER 17.

explorator, scout.
idoneus, suitable (*ad* before gerund ; dat. of a noun).
deligo, *ĕre*, choose ; *deligo*, *are*, bind.
complures, several.
sequor, follow.

unā, adv. together.
quidam, certain.
demonstro, *ostendo*, point out.
impedimenta, baggage (of an army).
sarcinae, baggage (of an individual soldier).
audeo, dare ; *audio*, hear.

CHAPTER 18.

loci natura, nature of the ground ; natural position.
apertus, open.
altitudo, height ; *longitudo*, length ; *latitudo*, breadth.

CHAPTER 19.

subsequor, follow up.
agmen claudo, bring up the rear.
transgredior, *transeo*, cross.
proelium, *pugna*, battle ; *bellum*, war.
cedo, retreat, fall back, retire.
abdo, hide ; *abdo me*, hide myself.
in silvas se abdiderunt, they hid in the woods.
videor, seem.

CHAPTER 20.

signum, standard.
oportet, it behooves.
arcesso, send for.
cohortor, exhort, encourage.
superior, (1) upper, higher ; (2) previous.

CHAPTER 21.

perturbo, disturb, confuse.
paratus, ready.
desum, I am lacking.
conspicio, behold, catch sight of.
consisto, halt.

CHAPTER 22.

subsidium, support ; *auxilia*, allies, reinforcements.
impedio, hinder, obstruct.

CHAPTER 23.

sinister, left ; *dexter*, right.
vulnus, wound.

locus superior, higher ground, heights.
in fugam dare or *conicere*, put to flight.
cornu, wing (of an army).

CHAPTER 24.

circumvenio, surround.
rursus, again.
perterreo, frighten thoroughly.
compleo, fill.
premo, press.
supero, *vinco*, conquer, defeat.

CHAPTER 25.

occīdo, *interficio*, kill.
neco, put to death.
conficio, (1) finish, (2) exhaust, disable.
inferior locus, lower ground.
angustus, (1) narrow, (2) tight, difficult.
novissimi, those in the rear.
scutum, shield ; *gladius*, sword.

CHAPTER 26.

signa converto, face about.
potior (abl.), gain possession of.
celeritās, speed, quickness.
periculum, danger, risk.

CHAPTERS 27—35.

commutatio, change.
salus, safety.
cădo, *cecĭdi*, fall ; *caedo*, *cecīdi*, cut, kill.
iniuria, wrong-doing.
auxilio venire, come to the aid of.
creber, frequent.
vires, strength.
plerumque, generally ; *plerīque*, most (people).
onus, burden.
modus, manner, form.
respondeo, reply.
porta, gate ; *portus*, harbour.
exeo, *excedo*, *egredior*, go out, leave.
subito, *repentino*, suddenly, unexpectedly.

inīquus locus, unfavourable place.
postridie eius diei; *postero die*; *postridie*, on the morrow.
marĭtĭmus, maritime.
attingo, border on, touch.
incolo, inhabit.
legatus, ambassador; *legatio*, embassy.

MISCELLANEOUS:

Review *all* the meanings of the following words as used in Caesar:

acies, agmen, fuga, pax, remus, vadum, vallum, lătus, portus, signum, oneraria, naves solvere, septentrio, vigilia, tempestas, aestus, civis, civitas, finis, fines, consilium, concilium, conventus, legatus, eques, equitatus, tantus, quantus, quot, summus, ullus, agger, ager, quisque, quisquam, quidam, aliquis, deligo (2 words), reperio, cognosco, ordo, eo (adv.) inde, unde, quo (adv.) item, audeo, itaque, ita, sic, autem, vero, tamen, priusquam, quam, at, atque, paro, pareo, confirmo, conor, cogo, genus, revertor, colloco, comparo, confero, constituo, expono, egredior, fere, circiter, nox, pes, pedĕs, nam, iam, enim, sed, statim, rursus, ibi, ubi, spes, annus, alter, alius, uter, uterque, nullus, nemo, imperium, impero, impetro, pugno, pugna, propter, apud, pro, prope, longus, longe, graviter fero, capio, existimo, arbitror, puto, relinquo, excedo, arma, populus, accipio, aestas, aetas, aditus, ora, litus, adire, interim, gero, satis, huc accedebat, accidit, nactus, natus, conspicio, convoco, convenio, decem milia passuum, esseda, plerique, plerumque, manus, aqua, hoc genus pugnae, consuevi, consuesco, funda, sagitta, pedem referre, quae res magno usui est, decem, decimus, desilio, officium, magistratus, in officio esse, fides, subsequor, animadverto, ex navi egredior, proelio facto, quaero, quĕror, ignosco, quartus, inferior, pulvis, statio, paulo, occupo, adorior, incendo, diu, orbis, terga vertere, occīdo, discedo, praeficio, praeesse, qua de causa, video, fio, conspectus, arbitratus, veritus, secutus, virtus, lenis, cursus, tertiā vigiliā, subduco, deduco.

APPENDIX B.

SIGHT READING,

DE BELLO GALLICO,

BOOK VII. (*Adapted*).

(For hints and vocabulary on each passage, see pages 18 and 19. Passages specially adapted for Honor students begin with No. 27.)

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX.

1. Quietā Galliā, Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede, de senatusque consulto certior factus, delectum totā provinciā habere instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi rumoribus Galli, retineri urbano motu Caesarem neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsi occasione, qui iam ante se subiectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipiunt.

2. Inter se principes Galliae queruntur de Acconis morte ; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam ; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis deposcunt, qui belli initium faciant et Galliam in libertatem vindicent. Imprimis rationem esse habendam dicunt, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit. Postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque recuperare.

3. His rebus agitatis profitentur Carnutes, se nullum periculum communis salutis causā recusare, principesque ex omnibus bellum

facturos pollicentur et ut iureiurando ac fide sanciatur petunt, ne facto initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. Tum collaudatis Carnutibus, dato iureiurando ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto, ab concilio disceditur.

4. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes Gutruato et Conconnetodumno ducibus, Cenabum signo dato concurrunt civesque Romanos, qui negotiandi causā ibi constiterant, in his Gaium Fufium Citam, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae iussu Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. Nam quae Cenabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter centum sexaginta.

5. Simili ratione Vercingetorix, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibetur ab Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant; expellitur ex oppido Gergovia; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum. Hac coacta manu, quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut communis libertatis causā arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate.

6. Rex ab suis appellatur. Dimittit legationes. Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Omnibus civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet; imprimis equitatui studet. Summae diligentiae summam severitatem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. Nam, maiore commisso delicto, igne atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviore de causa auribus desectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento.

7. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. Eius adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo

facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Aedui copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi, domum revertuntur legatisque nostris renuntiant, se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse. Bituriges eorum discessu statim cum Arvernis iunguntur.

8. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas res virtute Gnei Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellegeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiones arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem recte committi videbat.

9. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobroges et Gabalos ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam eruptionem facere contendit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus, Volcis, Arecomicis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit, partem copiarum ex provincia supplementumque, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in Helvios, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.

10. His rebus comparatis, represso iam Lucterio et remoto, in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, altissimā nive iter impediebat, tamen discussā nive atque ita viis patefactis summo militum sudore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevenna ut muro munitos existimabant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam latissime possint, vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec famā ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferentur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, uti suis fortunis consulat neu se ab hostibus diripi patiatur. Quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos.

11. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, ab exercitu discedit, Brutum adulescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnes

partes equites quam latissime pervagentur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nanctus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Aeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. Hac re cognita Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat, oppugnare instituit.

12. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat, ne stipendiariis Aeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videret positum esse. Praestare visum est omnes difficultates perpeti, quam omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum sustineant. Duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

13. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, oppugnare instituit idque biduo circumvallavit; tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, iumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari iubet. Ea qui conficeret, Gaium Trebonium legatum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter faceret. Cenabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui, tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, praesidium Cenabi tuendi causa, comparabant. Huc biduo pervenit.

14. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint militibus, imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris contingebat, veritus, ne nocte ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare iubet. Cenabenses paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nuntiata, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse iusserat,

portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur. Oppidum, diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem, traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

15. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum, positum in via Noviodunum oppugnare. instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma iumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserant. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum novi aliquid iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

16. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet, proelium equestre committit ; laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter quadringentos submittit, quos ab initio habere secum instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen receperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatam existimabant ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum, profectus est, quod eo oppido recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

17. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis, suos ad concilium convocat. Docet, longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundent et quod anni tempore subleventur. Pabulum secari non posse ; necessario dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere : hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda neglegenda : vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere.

18. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in fini-

bus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur; Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint perculo tuta. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, coniuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici.

19. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem in reliquis fit civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi solatii proponebant, quod se celeriter amissa reciperaturos confidebant. Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret an defendi. Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogerentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata, unum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

20. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum ab Avarico longe milia passuum sedecim. Ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cognoscebat et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat. Omnes nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur magnoque incommodo afficiebat.

21. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar quae aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit; nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentaria Boios atque Aeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri non multum adiuvabant, alteri celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. Summa difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi Romani maiestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret et, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant.

22. Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cogcovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitraretur. Quibus rebus cognitis media nocte silentio profectus, ad hostium castra mane pervenit. Illi celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnes in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri iussit.

23. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat non latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle, interruptis pontibus, Galli continebant omniaque vada ac saltus obtinebant, sic animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore. Indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, quanto detrimento necesse sit constare victoriam. Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, administrare instituit.

24. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis insimulatus, quod, castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit :—Quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus: quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, equitum vero operam illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti. Summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae habendam gratiam, quod paucitatem eorum cognoscere potuerint.

25. Imperium se ab Caesare per proditionem nullum desiderare. "Haec ut intellegatis," inquit, "a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romanos milites." Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vinculisque excruciaverat. Hi iam

ante edocti, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut procoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam ferre operis laborem posse; itaque statuisse imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. "Haec," inquit, "a me," Vercingetorix, "beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insimulatis; cuius operā sine vestro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem fame consumptum videtis."

26. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis concrepat: summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de eius fide dubitandum, nec maiore ratione bellum administrari posse. Statuunt, ut decem milia hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent.

PASSAGES SUITABLE FOR HONOR STUDENTS.

27. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cuiusque modi Gallorum occurrebant. Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius, quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque usitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur. Apertos cuniculos praeustā et praeacutā materiā et pice fervefacta et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

28. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem, paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur. Hae revinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur; ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. His collocatis et coagmentatis alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis arte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iusta muri altitudo expleatur. Hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant, tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunitatem.

29. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione, milites, cum frigore et imbribus tardarentur, tamen labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus viginti quinque aggerem latum pedes trecentos triginta altum pedes quinquaginta tres exstruxerunt. Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret et Caesar milites hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum, fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant, eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato duabus portis ab utroque latere eruptio fiebat.

30. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id non magnā iacturā suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. Iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus dederent. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

31. Postero die Caesar promota turri, magno coorto imbre, non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidius in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Legionibusque inter castra vineasque in occulto expeditis, cohortatus, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter compleverunt.

32. Hostes re nova perterriti, muro turribusque deiecti, in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constiterunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam veniretur, acie instructa depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi partes petiverunt, parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa

portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae studeret. Sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis incitati non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt. Denique ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter milium quadraginta vix octingenti, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt.

33. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohortatusque est, ne se animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo. Non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. Errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum defendi, cuius rei testes ipsos haberet, sed factum imprudentia Biturigum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur. Id tamen se celeriter sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius consensui ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere ; idque se prope iam effectum habere. Interea aequum esse ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinerent.

34. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat, plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integra primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario dignitas incommodo accepto in dies augebatur. Simul in spem veniebant eius affirmatione de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo confirmati homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda existimarent.

35. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque eas donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque facillime capere posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat ; simul, ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, sagittariosque

omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet. His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. Interim Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

36. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nactus, exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Iam prope hieme confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat : summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratūs antiquitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuessent, duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. Civitatem esse omnem in armis ; divisum senatum, divisum populum. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti, pars cum parte civitatis confligat ; id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate.

37. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset ad vim atque arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus confideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimavit et, quod legibus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se Decetiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, Cotum imperium deponere coëgit, Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

38. Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Aeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit : quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit, sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam duxit ; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi

reliquit. Qua re cognita Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

39. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent, erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante autumnum Elaver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit. His, quam longissime possent, egredi iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat, in castra perventum, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

40. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit equestrique eo die proelio facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnes aditus difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum positis mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatem copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi collibus occupatis, horribilem speciem praebebat, neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, perspiceretur. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus; quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione prohibituri hostes videbantur. Sed is locus praesidio ab his non nimis firmo tamen tenebatur. Silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem a maioribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto etiam singuli commeare possent.

41. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecuniā cum quibusdam adulescentibus colloquitur,

quorum erat princeps Litaviccus. Unam esse Aeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; quā traductā locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. Esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sed plus communi libertati tribuere. Cur enim potius Aedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem quam Romani ad Aeduos veniant? Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent.

42. Litaviccus accepto exercitu, cum milia passuum circiter triginta ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus lacrimans, "Quo proficiscimur," inquit, "milites? Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati proditionis, ab Romanis indictā causā interfecti sunt. Haec ab ipsis cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt: nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare." Producuntur hi, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus pronuntiaverat, multitudini exponunt; equites Aeduorum interfectos, quod collocuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media caede fugisse. Conclamant Aedui et Litaviccum obsecrant, ut sibi consulat. "Quasi vero," inquit ille, "non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernis nosmet coniungere. An dubitamus, quin nefario facinore admisso Romani iam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? Proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt, atque hos latrones interficiamus." Nuntias tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit, eodem mendacio de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, suas iniurias persequantur.

43. Eporedorix cognito Litavicci consilio media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem pravis adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit. Gaium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. Progressus milia passuum viginti quinque, agmen Aedu-

orum conspicatus, immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare iubet. His cognitis et Litavicci fraude perspecta Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et proiectis armis mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus Gergoviam profugit.

44. Caesar, nuntiis ad civitatem Aeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis exercitui ad quietem datis, castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites a Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. Summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum integri defessis succederent. Multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisse tormenta. His rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum solis in castra pervenit.

45. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis nuntiis ab Litavicco acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut auditionem habeant pro re comperta. Bona civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem Convictolitavis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admisso ad sanitatem reverti pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum militum iter ad legionem facientem fide data ex oppido Cabillono educunt; idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectis maiorem multitudinem armatorum concitant.

46. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem be bonis direptis decernunt, Litavicci fratrumque bona publicant, legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. Haec faciunt reciperandorum suorum causa; sed contaminati facinore, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae exterriti consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat,

tamen, quam mitissime potest, legatos appellat; nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque de sua in Aeduos benevolentia deminuere. Ipse maiorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quemadmodum a Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

47. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene rei gerendae. Nam cum in minora castra operis perspiciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Miratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod iam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse eius iugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi; vehementer huic illos loco timere, nec iam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

48. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas; eis de media nocte imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius omnibus locis vagentur. Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci deque his stramenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum specie ac simulatione collibus circumvehi iubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes iubet petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra. Legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis suspicio atque omnes illo ad munitionem copiae traducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militaribus raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri velit, ostendit; imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit; hoc una celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His

rebus expositis signum dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

Milites dato signo celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur ; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, subito in tabernaculo opressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus militum eriperet.

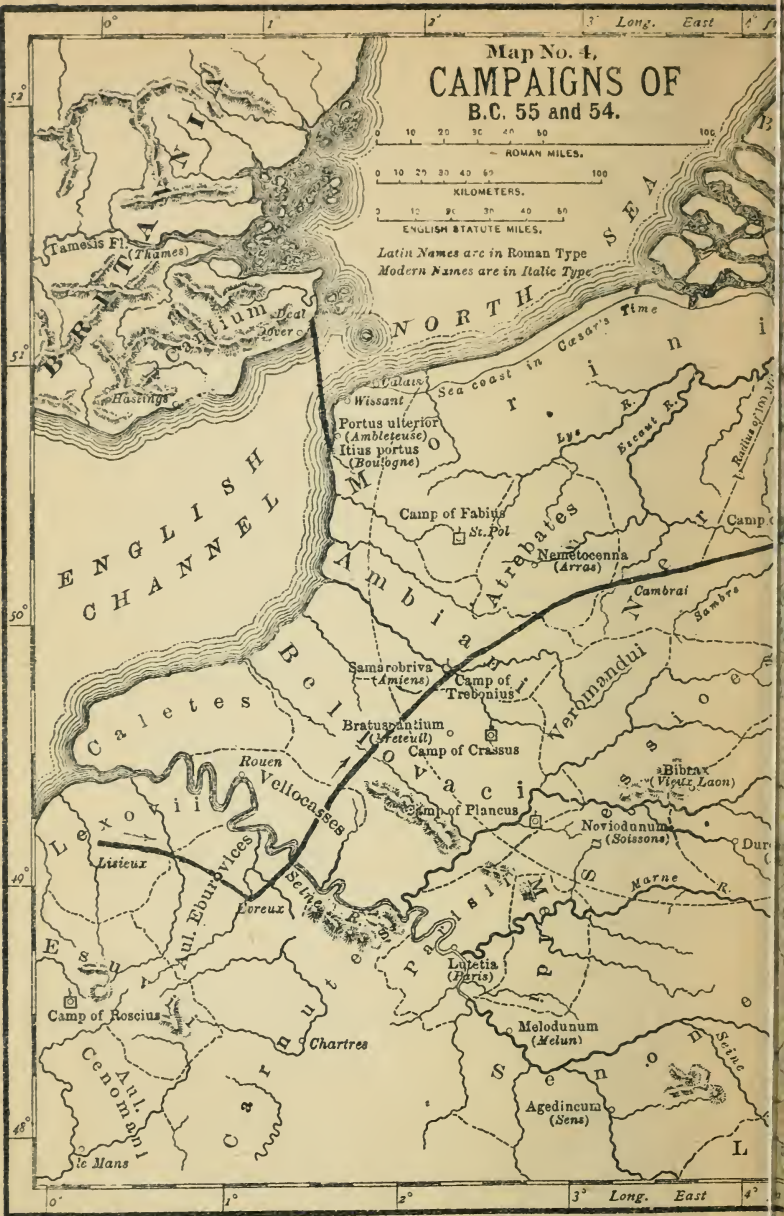
49. Consecutus id quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani iussit, legionisque decimae, quacum erat, continuo signa constituit. At reliquarum legionum milites non exaudito sono tubae, quod satis magna vallis intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur ; sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, quod non virtute consequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt. Matresfamiliae de muro vestem argentumque iactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne a mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent; nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. L. Fabius, centurio legionis VIII., quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit ; hos ipse rursus singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

50. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum a Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec

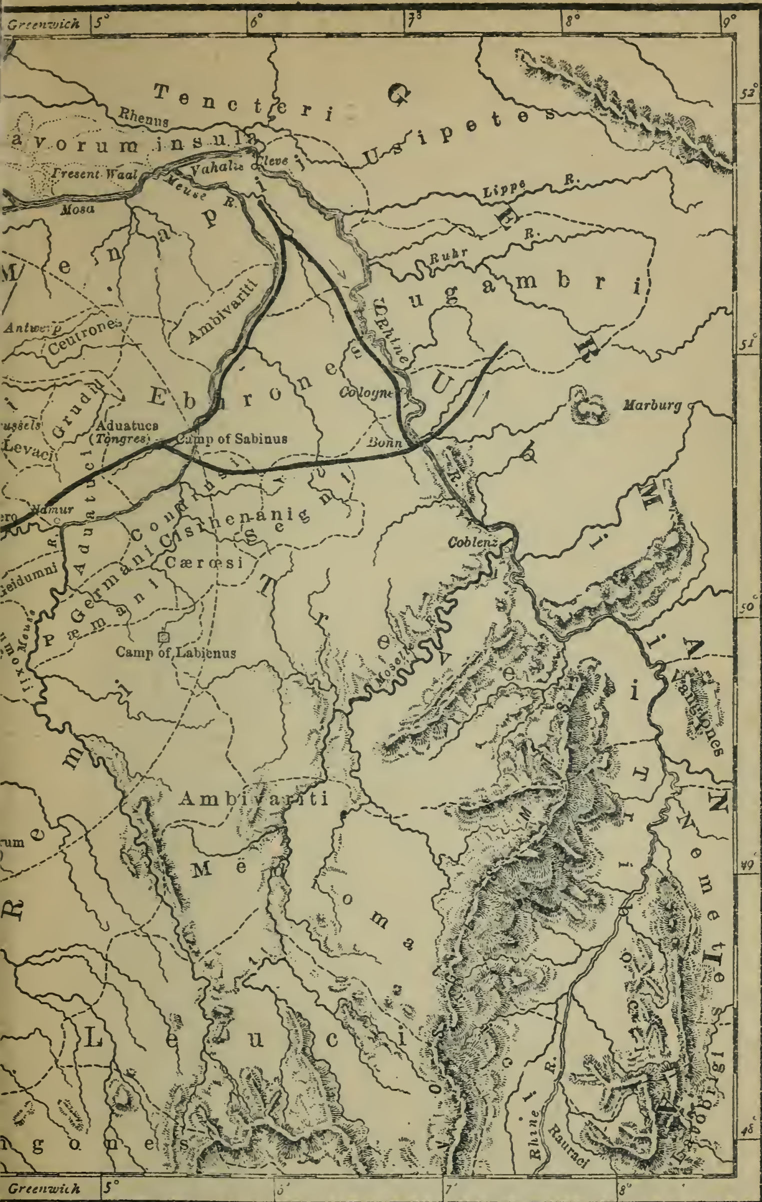
loco nec numero aequa contentio; simul et cursu et spatio pugnae fatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

Caesar cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

51. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causa miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris umeris exsertis animadvetebantur, quod insigne pacatorum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio, quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti muro praecipitabantur. Marcus Petronius, eiusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos data facultate vobis consulite." Simul in medios hostes irrupit duobusque interfectis reliquos a porta paulum summovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis "Frustra," inquit, "meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt. Proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite." Ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.



Map No. 4.
CAMPAIGNS OF
B.C. 55 and 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type
Modern Names are in Italic Type
Long. East
BRITANNIA
Tamesis Fl. (Thames)
Cantium
Deal
Dover
Hastings
NORTH SEA
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Sea coast in Cæsar's Time
Calais
Wissant
Portus ulterior (Ambleteuse)
Itius portus (Boulogne)
Morini
Lys R.
Escaut R.
Radius of 100 Mi.
Camp of Fabius
St. Pol
Atrebates
Nemetocenna (Arras)
Nervii
Cambrai
Sambre
Ambiani
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Camp of Trebonius
Veromandui
Bellovaci
Bratuspantium (Breteuil)
Camp of Crassus
Caletes
Rouen
Vellocasses
Camp of Plancus
Suessiones
Bibrax (Vieux Laon)
Noviodunum (Soissons)
Marne R.
Lexovii
Lisieux
Aul. Eburovices
Evreux
Seine R.
Parisii
Lutetia (Paris)
Remi
Esuvii
Camp of Roscius
Carnutes
Chartres
Aul. Cenomani
le Mans
Melodunum (Melun)
Senones
Seine
Agedincum (Sens)
Camp
Dur



Greenwich
5°
6°
7°
8°
9°
53°
52°
51°
50°
49°
48°
Tencteri
Rhenus
avorum insula
Present Waal
Vahalis
Cleve
Mosa
Meuse R.
Usipetes
Lippe R.
R.
Ruhr
Menapii
Sugambri
Antwerp
Ceutrones
Ambivariti
Rhine
Ebrones
Grudii
Cologne
Marburg
Aduatuca
(Tongres)
Camp of Sabinus
Bonn
Levaci
Aduatuci
Namur
Condrusi
Germani Cisrhenani
Segni
Coblenz
Cæræsi
Treveri
Pæmani
Camp of Labienus
Moselle
Vangiones
Ambivariti
Mediomatrici
Nemetes
Leuci
Vosges
Rhine R.
Rauraci
Triboci
Lingones
Greenwich
5°
6°
7°
8°



0° Longitude East 1° from Greenwich 2°
32°
31°
NORTH SEA
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Iceni
Cassi
Ancalites
Bury-St. Edmunds
Cambridge
Bedford
Sudbury
Ipswich
Aldburgh
Orford
Harwich
Colchester
Chelmsford
Maldon
Crouch R.
St. Albans
Hertford
Lea R.
Roding
Thames
R. Colne
London
Thames R.
Windsor
Sunbury
Kingston
Bromley
Croydon
Keston
Darent R.
Rochester
Way R.
Dorking
Mole
Guildford
Westerham
Maidstone
Canterbury
Littlebourn
Sandwich
Goodwin Sands
Deal
Walmer Castle
Medway R.
Wye
Ashford
Dover
Folkstone
Hithe
South Foreland
Arun
Dunkirk


Map No. 5.
BRITAIN
IN
CAMPAIGNS OF
B. C. 55 & 54.
ROMAN MILES.
KILOMETERS
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.
1 ST. CAMPAIGN
2 ND. CAMPAIGN
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Arundel
Brighton
Lewes
Hastings
Winchelsea
Rye
Dungeness
Calais Coast
Portus Ulterior
(Ambleteuse)
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
Morini
Canche R.
Authie R.
Ambiani
Somme
Bellovaci
Caletes
Dieppe
Bethune R.
Neufchatel
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
Bratuspantium
(Breteuil)
Longitude East from Greenwich
0°
1°
2°
30'